The Aneurin Great War Project: Timeline
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1914

Copyright Notice: This material was written and published in Wales by Derek J. Smith (Chartered Engineer). It forms part of a multifile e-learning resource, and subject only to acknowledging Derek J. Smith’s rights under international copyright law to be identified as author may be freely downloaded and printed off in single complete copies solely for the purposes of private study and/or review. Commercial exploitation rights are reserved. The remote hyperlinks have been selected for the academic propriety of their contents; they were free of offensive and litigious content when selected, and will be periodically checked to have remained so. Copyright © 2015-2021, Derek J. Smith.

First published 09:00 GMT 14th February 2015. This version 09:00 GMT 22nd January 2021
[BUT UNDER CONSTANT EXTENSION AND CORRECTION, SO CHECK AGAIN SOON]

This timeline supports the Aneurin series of interdisciplinary scientific reflections on why the Great War failed so singularly in its bid to be The War to End all Wars. It presents actual or best-guess historic event and introduces theoretical issues of cognitive science as they become relevant.

UPWARD
Author’s Home Page
Project Aneurin, Scope and Aims
Master References List

BACKWARD IN TIME
Part 1 - (Ape)men at War, Prehistory to 730
Part 2 - Royal Wars (Without Gunpowder), 731 to 1272
Part 3 - Royal Wars (With Gunpowder), 1273-1602
Part 4 - The Religious Civil Wars, 1603-1661
Part 5 - Imperial Wars, 1662-1763
Part 6 - The Georgian Wars, 1764-1815
Part 7 - Economic Wars, 1816-1869
Part 8 - The War Machines, 1870-1894
Part 9 - Insults at the Weigh-In, 1895-1914

FORWARD IN TIME
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1915
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1916
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1917
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1918
Part 11 - Deception as a Profession, 1919 to date

The Timeline Items

1914 [Wednesday 5th August; 0300hr] The British Admiralty broadcasts the following signal from the Poldhu Wireless Station [<=1903 (8th October)]: "WAR HAS BROKEN OUT BETWEEN ENGLAND AND GERMANY YOU MUST NOT GO TO GERMAN PORTS" (Barlow, 2014 online). [NO PARTICULAR THREAD]
1914 [Wednesday 5th-6th August] **Action in the Pacific [I - Initial Dispositions]**: [New sub-thread]

Upon the outbreak of war the Admiral commanding the Royal Navy's China Station, Sir Martyn Jerram [Wikipedia biography], has available to him at (or working out of) Hong Kong the battleship **HMS Triumph** [Wikipedia shipography], the armoured cruisers **HMS Minotaur** [1905 (2nd January)]=>12th August] and **HMS Hampshire** [Wikipedia shipography], and the light cruisers **HMS Newcastle** [Wikipedia shipography]=>12th August] and **HMS Yarmouth** [Wikipedia shipography]. On the East Indies Station Sir Richard Peirse [Wikipedia biography] has the battleship **HMS Swiftsure** [Wikipedia shipography] and the light cruiser **HMS Dartmouth** [Wikipedia shipography]. In Australian and New Zealand waters Sir George E. Patey [Wikipedia biography] has the battlecruiser **HMAS Australia** [Wikipedia shipography]=>1915 (28th January)] and the light cruisers **HMAS Melbourne** [Wikipedia shipography] and **HMAS Sydney** [Wikipedia shipography]=>9th November]. The German Asia Squadron is based at Tsingtao [map, etc.] under Maximilian von Spee [Wikipedia biography]=>11th August] and includes the modern armoured cruisers **SMS Scharnhorst** [Wikipedia shipography]=>5th October] and **SMS Gneisenau** [Wikipedia shipography]=>12th October], and the light cruisers **SMS Dresden** [Wikipedia shipography]=>10th September]. **SMS Leipzig** [Wikipedia shipography]=>12th October] and **SMS Emden** [Wikipedia shipography]=>9th November] are supported by an assortment of coaling and supply ships. Germany also has a further three light cruisers - **SMS Königsberg** [Wikipedia shipography]=>20th September], and (presently in the Caribbean) **SMS Karlsruhe** [Wikipedia shipography]=>6th August] and **SMS Nürnberg** [Wikipedia shipography]=>1st November] - on independent patrols as commerce raiders and intelligence gathering. All eight German ships - the Asia Squadron itself and the three commerce raiders - are priority targets for the Royal Navy, but their war orders are not known and the Pacific is a very big place to hide in. Only the **Emden** is presently at port at Tsingtao, the other four ships of the squadron being presently at Pohnpei/Ponapé [map, etc.] in the Caroline Islands. These two elements set sail to join forces the following day [there is now a choice of two sub-threads to follow: operations against the Asia Squadron continue at 11th August as *Coronel and the Falklands*, whilst other operations in the Pacific (not least the reduction of Tsingtao itself) continue at 6th August as *Action in the Pacific ...*]. [THREAD = WWI SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Wednesday 5th-16th August: 0430hr, then continuous] **The Belgian Campaign [I - The Siege of Liège]**: [Continued from 4th August] This 10-day siege is fought out for control of the Meuse Valley between carefully selected elements of **von Bülow**'s [4th August]=>20th August] Second Army commanded by Otto von Emmich [4th August] and the Belgian garrison in and around Liège under Gérard Leman [Wikipedia biography]. The Belgian defences include the ring of 12 **Brialmont** forts constructed in the 1880s [1888 (28th July)], and of course the German siege artillery has brought with it a number of its 420mm *Big Berthas* [1904], 305mm *Skodas* [1906], and 250mm *sMW* [1910], under the experienced artillery officer Max Bauer [Wikipedia biography]=>14th September]. The first 48 hours of the battle see the freshly arrived German infantry committed against the forts themselves, against a complex of trenches, barricades, and occupied buildings in front of and between the forts, and - whenever they can penetrate that far - against the city at the centre of that ring. This phase of the battle begins at 0430hr with a German artillery barrage (not at this point by their heaviest guns, remember), followed at 1000hr by an unsuccessful set-piece infantry attack against the fort of Barchon in the north-eastern sector of the defensive ring. Fighting in that sector then continues into the night until at 0130 the staff officer Erich Ludendorf [Wikipedia biography] chances to be at the command post of 14e Brigade when that unit's commanding general is killed. He assumes command and takes them through a gap between the Belgian forts all the way down to the centre of the city, where the Citadel itself surrenders early on 7th August. Liège thereby ceases to be a viable strongpoint, and by this time the Belgian field defences have also all been swept away, with the surviving defenders taking shelter in the forts. The forts, therefore, still stand fast, but isolated now, as beads without a string; moreover the German assault units have lost...
much of their original strength. As a result it will be a further nine days before Bauer's super-heavies can bombard the forts into submission one by one. The effect of Bauer's bombardment is magnified by the fact that the individual forts are not interlinked by underground passageways, nor are the telephone cables sufficiently deeply buried to protect them from being quickly cut during an artillery bombardment. [sub-thread continues at 12th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 5th August] **Sir John French** [1st Earl of Ypres]1922 [29th July<=>24th August] and **Sir Horatio H. Kitchener** [1st Earl Kitchener]1914 [4th August<=>6th August] attend the Imperial War Cabinet1 at 10 Downing Street and set out the War Office's plans to get the B.E.F. across the Channel. It is agreed to start the process on 9th August. For his part **Helmuth von Moltke** [the Younger] [1906<=>20th August] is at his OHL [= Oberste Heeresleitung = Supreme Army Headquarters] in Luxembourg, whilst **Joffre** [7th February<=>8th August] is at his GQG [= Grand Quartier Générale = General Headquarters] at Vitry-le-François2 [map, etc.], Marne.

1 **ASIDE:** The National Archives website explains that meetings of the War Cabinet were largely unminuted until 1915, and are then incomplete until 1916.

2 **ASIDE:** When the Germans subsequently advance toward the Marne, Joffre moves his GQG back to Bar-sur-Aube, 40 miles to the south; then, as the threat to the French capital subsides, it moves to Chantilly, Paris. Likewise Von Moltke moves OHL forward to Spa [map, etc.], Belgium. The first British GHQ [= General Headquarters] will be established at St. Omer [map, etc.] as soon as the B.E.F. start arriving in France.

1914 [Wednesday 5th August] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [II - The Call Goes Out]:** [Continued from 1st August] On behalf of the War Office **Alfred Harmsworth, Baron Northcliffe of Thanet** [henceforth Lord Northcliffe] [Wikipedia biography] has his newspapers1 feature a full-page advertisement entitled "Your King and Country Needs You". Designed by the advertising executive **Eric Field** [no convenient biography] the piece brings a tidal wave of enthusiastic volunteers to the recruiting stations over the coming days and spawns a tidal wave of look-alike posters and handbills over the coming months [sub-thread continues at 6th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 RECRUITMENT]

1 **ASIDE:** The Northcliffe stable included The Times, the Daily Mail, the Evening News, and the Daily Mirror.

**RESEARCH ISSUE - THE COMMUNICATION OF ARTISTIC INTENT:**
Neuroscientists have traditionally found it surprisingly difficult to identify the key stages in the mental processing involved when admiring graphic, sculpted, or installation artworks. This is because the basic visual system - about which much of value is known - is not the only neural system involved. Specifically the visual system simply delivers a preliminary set of identifications to other mental systems, not least (a) the brain's more primitive emotional system, and (b) its affective, semantic, and propositional systems. About these associated systems (and our brains possess perhaps as much brain tissue for the emotions qua emotions as for vision qua vision, as much again for affect qua affect, and four or five times as much again for semantics and propositionality combined) far less is known. It follows that artistic intent (on the part of the artist) only effectively creates the desired artistic appreciation (on the part of the onlooker) when the communicative act in the mind of the one is skilfully tailored to the individual prior knowledge and experience of the other. Further Reading: This is all covered in the Companion Resource, Sections 2, 3, and 6, and associated figures.

1914 [Wednesday 5th August 1700hr and overnight] **Atrocity [II - Saint Hadelin et al.]:** [Continued from 4th August] These events take place in the countryside around Liège during the period of infiltration and counter-infiltration as German units tried to find safe routes between the ring of Brialmont forts around that city [<=1888 (28th July), noting especially the attached ASIDE]. **Saint Hadelin** [too small for a factsheet] is a rural hamlet around three miles south-east of Fort
Fléron, one of those forts, and therefore ideally situated to be used by 11th Brigade under Georg von Wachter [no convenient biography] as a forward headquarters. The unit in question is the 11th Brigade’s 35th FR2, and during the next 24 hours 104 civilians are reportedly executed in and around Saint Hadelin3, a few after a hastily arranged court martial but most by kerbside justice. Similar provocations and similar summary reprisals occur in other sectors around the battle line, with Horne and Kramer (2001) mentioning incidents on the west bank of the Meuse at Herstal (27 civilians killed) and Herméè (11) at the hands of 34th Brigade, now across the Meuse in strength and closing in on the northern suburbs of Liège. Also (same unit) on the east bank at Warsage (12 hostages executed); also at Herve (38), Battie (33), Berneau/Soumagne (118), Micheroux (11), Retinne (40), and Melen (108) at the hands of 14th Brigade; Also at Blégny (52) at the hands of 27th Brigade; also at Riessonart (40), Louveigné (17), Poulseur (6), and Francorchamps (14) at the hands of 38th Brigade and 43rd Brigade [sub-thread continues at 20th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES]

1 ASIDE: In the event Fort Fléron was the last of the Liège forts to fall, and the only one to have been more or less totally over-built in the intervening years. The main Liège fort heritage museum facilities are given in the Visit Belgium website at http://www.visitbelgium.com/?page=world-war-i.

2 ASIDE: FR = Fusiler Regiment.

3 ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: As with the atrocity at Visé two days previously, these events are still [2014] actively being remembered, with the monument at Saint Hadelin listing 57 victims by name [see local website for details and photographs]. Moreover as the details filtered out from the battlefields they were pounced upon by the nascent Allied propaganda machines as evidence of German brutality. We shall be developing this narrative in detail in future entries, however readers eager for a preview may wish to divert to a 1917 work by the British academic-turned-paid-propagandist (and later well-respected historian) Arnold J. Toynbee [Wikipedia biography] entitled "The German Terror in Belgium" [full text online]. (Note, however, that this volume was written in 1917 to help convince the U.S. to join the war, and accordingly frequently combines a sales pitch with the facts as they were then known.) [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUE, AND SUBTERFUGES]


1914 [Wednesday 5th August] The naval attaché at the German Embassy in New York City, one Karl Boy-Ed [Wikipedia biography], receives a USD300,000 payment from the American headquarters of Friedrich Bayer and Company [1900=<1st October] to fund a clandestine network of German spies and agitators in the U.S. His primary objectives include (1) reducing Canadian support for Britain, (2) capitalising on Mexico’s hostility to the U.S., and (3) interfering with the flow of American munitions to the Allied armies. In this latter endeavour he will be aided (a) by the large numbers of ethnic Germans in the steel industries of Pennsylvania, and (b) by the large numbers of ethnic Irish in New York City and elsewhere. Bayer will be refunded the money back in Germany by a case controller in the Reichsmarineamt named Franz von Rintelen [Wikipedia biography=>7th December (ASIDE)]. [THREA​D = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Wednesday 5th August] Under the auspices of the Seattle Central Labor Council [Wikipedia factsheet; 21st Century website] the Canadian-American left-wing campaigner Hulet M. Wells [Wikipedia biography=>1916 (26th May)] publishes the following (still highly quotable) manifesto for pacifism and American neutrality ...

"Whereas, the appalling loss of life which will inevitably result, the inexpressible suffering from the systematic mangling and crippling of human bodies on a vaster scale than has ever
before been possible, the laying waste of lands and the destruction of homes, the ensuing industrial depression, the agony of bereaved women, and the brutalising of those who kill their kind - all these hideous results and more - will fall with crushing force on the working class alone, while the kings, capitalists, and aristocrats remain in safety, and Whereas, no possible outcome of such an international war can benefit to any extent whatever the workers, whose enemies are not the workers of other nations, but the exploiting class of every nation, and Whereas, no possible outcome of such an international war can benefit to any extent whatever the workers, whose enemies are not the workers of other nations, but the exploiting class of every nation, and Whereas, no possible outcome of such an international war can benefit to any extent whatever the workers, whose enemies are not the workers of other nations, but the exploiting class of every nation, and Whereas, all the nations now preparing to do wholesale murder are nominally Christian, and a majority of those do the killing are affiliated with the various churches of the Christian religion, Therefore, as representatives of the organized working class, we declare the European war to be an international crime and a horror for which there is no parallel in savagery, and we denounce the church, which claims to be founded on the principle of peace and good will, for having failed to interpose its opposition to this orgy of blood. We further declare that one reason for the suspicious eagerness with which the rulers of all these nations have entered into hostility is because of the universal industrial unrest and the growing spirit of working class solidarity which, if unchecked, threatens the present ruling class. To all those workers of Europe who have resisted the war craze we extend our sympathy and respect, and we pledge our efforts against any attempt to draw our own country into a foreign war” (quoted in O'Connor, 2009, pp81-82; bold emphasis added).

We shall be revisiting these issues in greater detail in due course. [THREAD = WW1 PACIFIST MOVEMENT]


1914 [Thursday 6th August] Action in the Pacific [II - New Guinea and Micronesia]: [Continued from 5th August] At the London War Cabinet's request the Australian government authorises the assembling of a military taskforce for the capture and occupation of German territories in Kaiser-Wilhelmsland and Micronesia [continues (with maplink) at 12th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Thursday 6th August] Kitchener [5th August<=>next entry] gets the Imperial War Cabinet to agree to withhold two of the B.E.F.'s six infantry divisions in case of German invasion. The B.E.F. as initially committed therefore consist of the other four infantry divisions and a single cavalry division [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY HIGH COMMAND]

1914 [Thursday 6th August] His patent in artillery sound-ranging [<=1913 (??th October)] earns a recently mobilised Leo Löwenstein [<=1913 (??th October)] a commission in a Nachrichten Battalion. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]


1914 [Thursday 6th August] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [IV - The Parliamentary Recruiting Committee]: [Continued from preceding entry] The Imperial War Cabinet also establishes a committee chaired by Prime Minister Asquith [30th July<=>27th...
August] to oversee the nation's response to the government's call for volunteers for military service [sub-thread continues at 8th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 RECRUITMENT]

1914 [Thursday 6th August] The German armed merchant cruiser Kronprinz Wilhelm [1901 (30th March)<>31st September] makes rendezvous off San Salvador, Bahamas, with the light cruiser SMS Karlsruhe [5th August<>10th September], to take on guns, crew, and ammunition [continues 4th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Friday 7th August] Coronel and the Falklands [I - Out of Retirement]: [New sub-thread, but see Action in the Pacific at 5th August] The ageing pre-Dreadnought HMS Canopus [1900 (17th March)<>10th September] is rapidly taken out of reserve and re-commissioned. On 21st August she will make her way to join the Canary Islands patrol, before moving on on 1st September to the Abrolhos Archipelago, off the coast of Brazil, there to join Christopher Cradock's [Wikipedia biography<>10th September] South Atlantic Cruiser Squadron [sub-thread continues at 11th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Friday 7th-19th August] The Frontiers Campaign [I - The Battle of Mulhouse]: [Readers unfamiliar with the psychological importance of Alsace to the French people should pre-read the story of its loss to the Germans during the Franco-Prussian War [=1871 (10th May)] and then the case for its reconquest subsequently set out in Joffre (1918 [full text online]).] This two-week battle for control of southern Alsace is fought between the advancing France First Army - the "Army of Alsace" - under Auguste Dubail [Wikipedia biography=14th August] and the German Seventh Army under Josias von Heeringen [Wikipedia biography=14th August]. Mulhouse is captured on the 8th, then recaptured in a German counter-attack on the 10th, and then captured again following heavy house-to-house fighting on 19th. The immediate outcome is a much-trumpeted French reoccupation of Alsace's second city [after Strasbourg], and there will be even further territorial gains later in the month as both sides frantically transfer troops to the other end of the evolving Western Front [sub-thread continues at 8th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1 ASIDE: See, for example, Joffre's proclamation to the inhabitants of Mulhouse, 7th August, reproduced in English at http://www.firstworldwar.com/source/joffre_alsace.htm.

2 ASIDE: The French are now able to choose the best line of defence and in the event they decide to fall back onto the easily defendable heights to the west of the Rhine. Alsace reverts to French territory at the end of the war, and remains so to the present day.

1914 [Friday 7th August] The British-registered FV Tubal Cain [no convenient shipography] is intercepted and sunk by the German armed merchant cruiser Kaiser Wilhelm der Grösse [1897 (4th May)<>26th August]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1 = fishing vessel

1914 [Saturday 8th August] Sun Yat-Sen in Japan: Following the dissolution of the Kuomintang [<=1913 (1st September)] Sun Yat-Sen [1913 (1st September)<>1915 (22nd December)] continues from exile to encourage revolution through a new organisation, the Chinese Revolutionary Party [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Saturday 8th-9th August] The East African Campaign [I - Action at Dar es Salaam]: In an early attempt to close down German naval base facilities in their East African possessions HMS Astraea [Wikipedia shipography] and HMS Pegasus [Wikipedia shipography=20th September] shell the port of Dar es Salaam [map, etc.], German East Africa, sinking the small survey ship SMS Möwe [Wikipedia shipography] and damaging the merchant ships
Feldmarschall and König [sub-thread continues at 15th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 8th August] The Frontiers Campaign [II - Instruction Générale No. 1]: [Continued from 5th August] Joffre [5th August<=>9th August] has now had a chance to study the accumulated intelligence reports to date and concludes that the Germans are indeed suspiciously strong on the right - or, to put it in plain language, he has "rumbled" the Schlieffen Plan [<=1894] while there is still time to do something about it. He therefore issues Instruction Générale No. 1 to the effect that he intends mounting two major counter-offensives, one into Lorraine using the First and Second Armies and the other northward into Eastern Flanders using the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Armies [sub-thread continues at 14th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

**********  THE VOLUNTEERING BEGINS  **********

1914 [Saturday 8th August] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [V - The Queues Begin to Form]: [Continued from 6th August] The recruiting service at Kingston-upon-Thames, Surrey, opens a new ledger headed "VOLUNTEERS", and over the coming month starts entering up the paperwork passed to it from its sub-offices around the county, both rural (e.g., Richmond, Sutton, and Epsom) and urban (e.g., Putney, Wandsworth, Streatham, Tooting, and Peckham [all now, but not then, postal districts in Greater London]) [sub-thread continues at 12th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 RECRUITMENT]

RESEARCH DATA: The Surrey recruiting papers are the most complete surviving corpus of such data, and are administered nowadays by the Surrey History Trust [website]. Records and associated documentation for Reading and rural Berkshire are maintained at the Berkshire Record Office, Reading [website]. Both sites offer fascinating insights into the impact of the war on daily life.

1914 [Saturday 8th August] RMS Oceanic [1899 (14th January)<=>25th August] is re-commissioned as an Armed Merchant Cruiser. The conversion process involves hoisting eight [needs confirmation - Ed.] 4.7" [=120mm] guns onto the ship's pre-existing1 mountings, and taking on the necessary military stores, officers, and crew [sub-thread continues at 25th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1ASIDE: Many pre-war British passenger liners received an Admiralty subsidy to be constructed for rapid conversion to military use.

1914 [Saturday 8th August] The Defence of the Realm [No. 1] Act, 1914: This Act of the British Parliament receives the Royal Assent and becomes law immediately. It contains only two brief provisions, namely (a) "[To issue regulations1] to prevent persons communicating with the enemy or obtaining information for that purpose or any purpose calculated to jeopardise the success of the operations of any of His Majesty's forces or to assist the enemy", and (b) "to secure the safety of any means of communication, or of railways, docks, or harbours; in like manner as if such persons were subject to military law and had on active service committed an offence under section 5 of the Army Act". The Act will be strengthened in the light of experience a month later [sub-thread continues at 28th August ...]. [THREAD = LEGALITIES AND THE WAR]

1ASIDE: The regulations were issued as and when necessary under the authority of the Act by publishing them in the London Gazette - see, for example, the Second Supplement to the edition of 11th August. Specifically Scottish and Irish business is covered by Edinburgh and Belfast sister editions.
1914 [Sunday 9th August] The light cruiser <strong>HMS Birmingham</strong> rams and sinks <strong>U-15</strong> off Fair Isle, Scotland, the first U-boat sinking of the war. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Sunday 9th August] Having resolved to retain two divisions to defend Britain against any attempt at an invasion [<=6th August] the B.E.F. starts to ship its first four divisions (roughly 80,000 men) across the English Channel. One of Dunn's sources [=>1938] describes the event on behalf of <strong>2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers</strong> ...

"[August 10th-11th:] The senior NCO's were given a long narrow cabin on the upper deck. 'I was one of the first in, and had a berth at the forward end; there was only one door, and it was at the end farthest from where I was. When I awoke we were out at sea - the vessel had sailed at 2am. I studied the porthole that was opposite me, wondering if I could get through it were we attacked by a submarine. However, our trip across the Channel was quite uneventful'. [...] We must have begun to disembark about 5.30. It is of historic interest that we were the first of many thousand troops to disembark at Rouen, and, with The Camerons and 1st Middlesex who landed at Le Havre, and the 2nd Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders who landed at Boulogne, all on August 11th, the first combatant British troops to land in France for the Great War" (pp8-10).

The order of battle will be as follows ...

I Corps (Sir Douglas Haig) [1st and 2nd Infantry Divisions]
II Corps (Sir Horace Smith-Dorrien) [3rd and 5th Infantry Divisions]

Here are some of the units involved (note the standard two battalion arrangement introduced by the <strong>Childers Reforms</strong> [<=1881 (1st July)]) ...

1st Bn <strong>South Wales Borderers</strong> [=>13th September; the 2nd Bn is in the Far East]
2nd Bn <strong>Welch Regiment</strong> [the 1st Bn is in India]
1st Bn <strong>Bedfordshire Regiment</strong> [the 2nd Bn is in South Africa and will return hurriedly]
1st Bn <strong>Royal Welch Fusiliers</strong> [returning hurriedly from Malta] [=>7th October]
2nd Bn <strong>Royal Welch Fusiliers</strong> [see above]

Around the same time the RWF's pre-existing 3rd (Reserve) Bn is assembled in and around Wrexham, and preparations are put in hand for the establishment of the first four <strong>Service Battalions</strong> from the first wave of volunteer recruits. In that these are administratively attached to the 1st Bn (and expected moreover to adopt that battalion's traditions, songs, jokes, camp tales, etc., etc.), these are numbered 1st/4th Bn, 1st/5th Bn, 1st/6th Bn, and 1st/7th Bn, and encamped in and around Conwy, Flint, Caernarvon, and Newtown. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

**ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY:** In his 1916 war history "<strong>The British Campaign in France and Flanders, 1914</strong>" the official propagandist [=>2nd September] <strong>Sir Arthur Conan Doyle</strong> [Wikipedia biography] puts it this way ...

"It is doubtful if so large a host has ever been moved by water in so short a time in all the annals of military history. There was drama in the secrecy and celerity of the affair. Two canvas walls converging into a funnel screened the approaches to Southampton Dock. All beyond was darkness and mystery. Down this fatal funnel passed the flower of the youth of Britain, and their folk saw them no more. They had embarked upon the great adventure of the German War. The crowds in the streets saw the last serried files vanish into the darkness of the docks, heard the measured tramp upon the stone quays dying farther away in the silence of the night, until at last all was still and the great steamers were pushing out into the darkness. No finer force for technical efficiency, and no body of men more hot-hearted in their keen desire to serve their country, have ever left the shores of Britain" (p62). [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]
1914 [Sunday 9th August] **Walther Rathenau** [1899<=>14th September] is appointed Director of the German *Kriegsrohstoffabteilung* [= “War-Raw-Material-Department”] (*KRA*) [Wikipedia factsheet], a newly created department within the War Ministry responsible for ensuring the adequate supply of strategic raw materials. Their initial survey of German industry reveals an alarming lack of preparedness for a long war, especially where commodities such as nitrates, oil, and rubber are concerned. [THREAD = WW1 FINANCIAL AND INDUSTRIAL WARFARE]

1914 [Sunday 9th August] The British socialist and peace activist **John Maclean** [Wikipedia biography] helps to organise an anti-war demonstration in Glasgow. When his turn comes to speak he calls for “class patriotism” above conventional patriotism, because the latter is nothing more than a murderous Capitalist confidence trick [there is a large archive of Maclean's writings at https://www.marxists.org/archive/maclean/index.html]. [THREAD = WW1 PACIFIST MOVEMENT]

1914 [Sunday 9th-10th August] French intelligence identifies German troop movements on the Belgian frontier thereby suggesting to **Joffre** [8th August<=>16th August] that a timely French offensive in Lorraine might impair whatever the Germans are up to by diverting reserves. The following day he issues *Instruction Particulière No. 10* to the effect that the main German effort is now recognised as being through Belgium. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1914 [Monday 10th August] The Canadian War Office approves the establishment of **Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry** [Wikipedia factsheet=>1915 (6th January)] at Edmonton, Alberta. The recruiting stations draw heavily on members of the **Legion of Frontiersmen** [Wikipedia factsheet=>4th October]. The regiment will sail for Britain on 27th September, and will arrive on 18th October. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Tuesday 11th August] **The SS Hobart Affair** [I - German Codebook Captured]: The Royal Australian Navy’s torpedo boat *HMAS Countess of Hopetoun* [Wikipedia shipography] commanded by one **J. T. Richardson** [no convenient biography] impounds the German liner *SS Hobart* [no convenient shipography] as it attempts anchorage off Melbourne, Victoria. The boarding party then succeed in capturing intact the *Hobart's Handelsverkehrsbuch* [= “Mercantile Signals Book”], which, over the coming days, is telegraphed to the Admiralty in London [sub-thread continues at 3rd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS] [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Tuesday 11th-13th August] **Coronel and the Falklands** [II - Council of War]: [Continued from 7th August] **Von Spee**’s [5th August<=>7th September] Asia Squadron re-coals at *Pagan Island* [map, etc.] in the Marianas and is joined by **SMS Emden** [5th August<=>9th November]. *Emden* is then formally detached and sent westward to disrupt Allied shipping in the Bay of Bengal, whilst the remaining ships of the squadron head off eastward on what will turn out to be a six-week voyage across the South Pacific toward Chilean waters [sub-thread continues at 7th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Wednesday 12th August] Approaching his 51st birthday and a veteran of cavalry operations in the Second Boer War, the author-historian **Arthur O. Vaughan** ["Owen Roscomy!"] [Wikipedia biography=>1st September] meets with **Kitchener** [6th August<=>31st August] and is given permission to raise a new yeomanry regiment from Wales' south-eastern counties (Owen, 1990). On 15th August the volunteers duly assemble in Sophia
Gardens, Cardiff. More than 2000 men are present but in the event only 501 recruits will be authorised (i.e., paid for) by the War Office. Much to Vaughan's irritation the War Office also insists that the new regiment be administered as a territorial force unit and not as a New Army unit [for the difference see 1st September (ASIDE)]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS] Owen, B. (1990). *Owen Roscomyl and the Welsh Horse*. Caernarfon: Palace Books.

1914 [Wednesday 12th August] **The Belgian Campaign [II - The Battle of Haelen]**: [Continued from 6th August] This battle is fought for a German breakthrough across the Gette River crossings around Haelen, north-eastern Belgium [map, etc.] between the advancing German II Cavalry Corps under Georg von der Marwitz [Wikipedia biography] and the Belgian Cavalry Division at and around Haelen under Léon de Witte [Wikipedia biography]. The outcome is a Belgian victory on the day, followed by a pre-planned withdrawal toward the fortress complex at Antwerp/Anvers [map, etc.] [sub-thread continues at 16th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 12th August] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [Vb - "No Thoroughfare"]**: [Continued from 8th August] Today's offering by the Punch Magazine editorial cartoonist Frederick H. Townsend [Spartacus Educational biography] is entitled "No Thoroughfare" [image in the biographic] and shows a determined Belgium barring the way to a sausage-wielding German [sub-thread continues at 14th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 PROPAGANDA]

1914 [Wednesday 12th August] **The Tenerife Primate Station [III - Köhler Stranded]**: [Continued from 26th December] Wolfgang Köhler [<=1913 (26th December)] is instructed by Berlin not to risk running the British naval blockade and to remain on the island for the duration of the war. [THREAD = THE MAKING OF MODERN COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1914 [Wednesday 12th August] **Action in the Pacific [III - Yap Wireless Station Destroyed]**: [Continued from 6th August] The armoured cruiser HMS Minotaur [<=1905 (2nd January)] and the light cruiser HMS Newcastle [<=5th August] shell the German Wireless Station on Yap Island [map, etc.] in German Micronesia, thus helping to isolate the German Far East Squadron at Tsingtao, China [sub-thread continues at 18th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Friday 14th August] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [VI - H. G. Wells]**: [Continued from 12th August] The Daily News publishes an article by the famous British novelist H. G. Wells [Wikipedia biography] under the title "The War That Will End War" [full text online]. Its basic case is as follows ...

"We are fighting Germany. But we are fighting without any hatred of the German people. We do not intend to destroy either their freedom or their unity. But we have to destroy an evil system of government and the mental and material corruption that has got hold of the German imagination and taken possession of German life. We have to smash the Prussian Imperialism […] for forty years an intolerable nuisance in the earth" (e4).

Shortly to be retained as an official propagandist [=>2nd September] Wells will continue in like vein throughout the war [sub-thread continues at 24th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Friday 14th-19th August] **The Frontiers Campaign [III - The Battle of Lorraine (The French Advance)]**: [Continued from preceding] Having already taken steps to stabilise the southern extreme of their border with Germany at the Battle of Mulhouse [<=7th August] the French now try for a breakthrough in Lorraine using their First and Second Armies under Dubai [7th August<=18th August] and Noel de Castelnau [Wikipedia biography] respectively, against the German Sixth (Bavarian) and Seventh Armies under Crown
**Prince Rupprecht of Bavaria** [Wikipedia biography] and **Heeringen** [7th August<=24th August], respectively. The French are advancing on a 50-mile front from (on the right) the remote Donon massif [map, etc.] in the Vosges Mountains, Bas-Rhin, via (in the centre) Sarrebourg [map, etc.], to (on the left) Morhange [map, etc.]. The front thus traces a diagonal about 30 miles to the east of **Nancy** [map, etc.]. On the left the offensive opens on 14th August with an attack at **Manhoué** [map, etc.] on the 1871 French-German border. The German defences on the Donon passes fall on 21st August, but reverses in the north of the sector result in the heights being abandoned that same night. The overall outcome therefore has to be rated as a French defeat [sub-thread continues at 18th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 14th August] The **Union of South Africa** [<=1910 (31st May)] declares war on Germany, thereby earning representation on the **Imperial War Cabinet**. [THREAD = WW1 FINANCIAL AND INDUSTRIAL WAR]

1914 [Friday 14th August] Thanks to his command of the French language and his understanding of French military traditions, **Edward L. Spears** [1903<=28th August (ASIDE)] is appointed Liaison Officer between the British High Command and the Headquarters of **Charles Lanrezac**'s [henceforth simply Lanrezac] [Wikipedia biography] French Fifth Army. He excels at this task during the First Battle of the Marne [=>6th September], and is then transferred to **Louis de Maud'huy**'s [Wikipedia biography] newly created French Tenth Army near Arras, where he will remain until wounded in January 1915. [THREAD = WW1 INDIVIDUAL HISTORIES] [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY HIGH COMMANDS]

1914 [Saturday 15th August] The **East African Campaign** [II - Action at Taveta]: [Continued from 8th August] Responding to the attack on Dar es Salaam [<=8th August], the commander of the German forces in East Africa **von Lettow-Vorbeck** [1891 (27th February)<=2nd November] mounts a successful raid on **Taveta** [map, etc.], British East Africa [sub-thread continues at 20th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT BATTLE **********
********** THE "PIG FARMERS"1 GET OFF TO A GOOD START **********
********** FIRST AERIAL DOGFIGHT **********

1914 [Saturday 15th-24th August] The **Serbian Campaign** [I - The Battle of Cer]: This battle is fought as part of the initial Austro-Hungarian invasion of Serbia between an advancing 250,000-man Austro-Hungarian army under **Oskar Potiorek** [Wikipedia biography] and a 180,000-man Serbian army under Regent **Alexander** [of Serbia, Croatia, and Slovenia]1 [1921 [I of Yugoslavia]] [<=23rd July]. The outcome is a decisive against-the-odds Serbian victory with disproportionate Austro-Hungarian casualties. The battle is noteworthy in the present context (a) for halting the Austro-Hungarian advance in its tracks, and for allowing one of the nations allied against the Central Powers to claim the honour of first blood, and (b) for the first aerial dogfight in history (between two reconnaissance aircraft armed only with their pilots' side-arms) [sub-thread continues at 6th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1 ASIDE: Potiorek reputedly referred to the Serbs before the battle as just a bunch of "pig farmers". He had forgotten that in war, as well as in sport, there is this important thing called "home advantage".

1914 [??th August] **WW1 Codebreaking** [I - Ewing Appointed]: Concerned at the difficulties decoding the increasing number of wireless intercepts, the Director of the Naval Intelligence Division (DID) **Sir**1 [1928] **Henry F. Oliver** [Wikipedia biography] obtains around this time the services of a friend of his, the 59-year-old Scottish physicist of renown, **Sir James A. Ewing** [Wikipedia biography] (Beesley, 1984).

1914 [Sunday 16th August] The Belgian Campaign [III - The Fall of Liège]: [Continued from 6th August] After 10 days under intense bombardment the last of the Liège forts surrenders. Having achieved the first strategic objective of the Schliffen Plan the Germans are now free to continue their advance south-westward along the Meuse toward the next Belgian strongpoint at Namur. The Belgian high command has already resolved to abandon Brussels without a fight and now falls back into the "National Redoubt" on 14th August in and around the port of Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August]. They are followed by elements of the German First Army under Alexander von Kluck [Wikipedia biography =>19th August], now that it is able to take the northern route around Liège without having to worry about its lines of communications. To help support Namur Joffre [9th August =>21st August] orders Lanrezac's [14th August =>20th August] Fifth Army into Belgium, with orders to advance northward into the Sambre-Meuse "peninsula" to threaten the southern flank of the German siege army [sub-thread continues at 20th August ...].[THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME: As the German armies move forward and leave only lines of communications troops in the vicinity of Liège, Louis Raemaekers [1st August =>20th August] reportedly (Allison, 1918 online) (and, if true¹, at no little personal risk) managed to visit the battlefields and interview atrocity survivors. What he learned so horrified him that his anti-war stance [<=1st August] now becomes openly anti-German, as can readily be seen in works such as [using their later Anglicised titles] "The Hostages", "Kultur", and "Toinette, the Franc-Tireur" [see these images at http://www.worldwar1postcards.com/louis-raemaekers.php]. Allison, J. Murray (1918) Raemaekers' Cartoon History of the War, Volume 1 - The First Twelve Months of the War. New York: Century.

₁ASIDE: Allison was one of the most professional of Britain's official propagandists [>=2nd September]. It follows that everything he says should be regarded as at best a selective truth.

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED SUBSEQUENTLY: In his 1916 war history "The British Campaign in France and Flanders, 1914" [<=9th August (ASIDE)] the official propagandist [=>2nd September] Sir Arthur Conan Doyle [9th August (ASIDE) <=>16th August (ASIDE)] will offer the following [technically excellent, by the way - see RESEARCH ISSUE below] piece of propaganda ...

"Liege was at last in the hands of the invaders. But already the second week of August was at an end — the British were crowding into France, the French line was thickening along the frontier — all was well with the Allies. Little David [i.e., Belgium - Ed.] had left a grievous mark upon Goliath. The German mobilisation was now complete, and the whole vast host, over a million strong, poured over the frontier. Never was seen such an army, so accurate and scientific in its general conception, so perfect in its detail. Nothing had been omitted from its equipment which the most thorough of nations, after years of careful preparation, could devise. In motor transport, artillery, machine guns, and all the technique of war they were unrivalled. The men themselves were of high heart and grand physique. By some twisted process of reasoning founded upon false information they had been persuaded that this most aggressive and unnecessary of wars was in some way a war of self-defence, for it was put to them that unless they attacked their neighbours now, their neighbours would certainly some day or other attack them" (p47). [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

RESEARCH ISSUE - PROPAGANDA TECHNIQUES: The Wikipedia factsheet on "Propaganda Techniques" [see it now] lists a number of specific rhetorical devices by which people can be persuaded to a particular line of argument. Check out the paragraphs for "Big Lie" and "Selective Truth", both of which are well exemplified
above. Communication science has no detailed theoretical framework to explain the mental processing involved in any of the listed techniques.

1914 [Sunday 16th August] The Goeben and the Breslau [I - The Escape]: Having been trapped at the eastern end of the Mediterranean by the declaration of war the German battlecruiser SMS Goeben\(^1\) and light cruiser SMS Breslau are gifted to the Ottoman Navy under the names TCG Göben. [Wikipedia shipography] and TCG Yavuz, respectively [sub-thread continues at 27th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

\(^1\)Sometimes, but we think incorrectly, seen as Göbel.

1914 [Sunday 16th August] Irish Home Rule [XXV - Redmond Courts the Republicans]: [Continued from 3rd August] The Leader of the (moderate) Irish Parliamentary Party, John Redmond [3rd August<=21st August] addresses a meeting at Port Laoise, County Laois, of the (more avowedly republican) Irish Volunteers [26th July<=25th October], encouraging them to volunteer to fight for Britain even though they wish to be independent from her [sub-thread continues at 21st August ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]


1914 [Tuesday 18th August] Action in the Pacific [IV - The Taskforce Sets Sail]: [Continued from 12th August] In Sydney harbour troops of the Australian Naval and Military Expeditionary Force [<=6th August] start embarking on the armed liner HMAS Berrima. She and her escorts sail for Port Moresby [map, etc.], New Guinea [modern Papua New Guinea] the following day [sub-thread continues at 23rd August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Tuesday 18th-21st August] The Frontiers Campaign [IV - The Battle of the Ardennes (The Advance)]: [Continued from 14th August] This battle is fought for positional advantage in the Ardennes between the French Third and Fourth Armies under Pierre Ruffey [Wikipedia biography] and Fernand de Langle de Cary [Wikipedia biography] respectively, and the German Fourth and Fifth Armies under Albrecht, Duke of Württemberg [Wikipedia biography] and Crown Prince Wilhelm of Prussia [Wikipedia biography], respectively. The battle begins with French gains from Neufchâteau [map, etc.] in the north. However strong German counterattacks [>=22nd August] will shortly force the French back to where they had started, and Longwy, then with no hope of a relief column getting through, will surrender on 26th August. On the French right, meanwhile ... [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

\(^1\)ASIDE: Longwy had been holding out ever since encircled during the German occupation of Luxembourg [=2nd August].

1914 [Tuesday 18th-20th August] The Frontiers Campaign [V - The Battle of Lorraine (The German Counterattack)]: [A.k.a. The Battle of Morhange] [Continued from preceding entry] This battle is fought for positional advantage south-east of the Ardennes between Crown Prince Rupprecht’s [14th August<=24th August] Sixth (Bavarian) Army, counter-attacking following the French gains of the preceding four days [<=14th August], and Noel de Castelnau’s [14th August<=24th August] battle-reduced Second Army. The outcome is a Bavarian victory, forcing the French to withdraw in the direction of Nancy [maplink at 14th August], to the hilly region east of the Rivers Moselle and Meurthe known as the Grand Couronné [=24th August], where they dig in, and this in turn requires Dubail’s [14th August<=24th August] First
Army to fall back toward Épinal [map, etc.] in order to maintain continuity of front. Ferdinand Foch's [Wikipedia biography] XX Corps performs so well in these operations that it will shortly earn him an important promotion [sub-thread continues at 21st August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 19th August] With von Kluck's [16th August<=>20th August] First Army preparing to enter Brussels Belgian army engineers blow up the antennae and equipment at the Laeken Wireless Station [<=28th March], [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** "CALL THAT AN ARMY??" **********

1914 [Wednesday 19th August] Kaiser Wilhelm II [30th July<=>28th August] is reported by the British press - perhaps falsely (i.e., as a deliberate propaganda ploy) - as ordering his forces to "walk over" the much smaller British Army, describing it as a "verächtlich kleine Arme" [= "contemptible little army"]. As a result the epithet "contemptible" will be adopted by the British soldier but only with a fond "we'll see about that, chum" to it. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Thursday 20th-25th August] The Belgian Campaign [IV - The Fall of Brussels and the Battle of Namur]: [Continued from 16th August] Following the Belgian collapse at Liège [<=16th August] von Kluck's [19th August<=>21st August] First Army enters Brussels without a fight. At the same time a three-day siege begins at Namur at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre Valleys between carefully selected elements of von Bülow's [5th August<=>21st August] Second Army under Max von Gallwitz [Wikipedia biography=>1915 (7th October)] and the Belgian garrison in and around Namur under Augustin E. Michel [Wikipedia biography]. The Belgian defences include the ring of nine Brialmont forts constructed in the 1880s [=1888 (26th July)], against which the German siege artillery now has one/four [reports differ, possibly because one artillery battery traditionally contains four pieces - Ed.] 420mm Big Bertha [=1904], four 305mm Skodas [=1906], and a number of 250mm sMW [=1910]. There are no preliminary infantry operations as at Liège, the task being left in its entirety to the siege artillery. The bombardment begins on 20th August and within 48 hours the forts at d'Andoy, Maizeret, Marchovelette, and Cognolée have been reduced to rubble. At 0600hr on 22nd August a small force of French infantry arrive from the south and is immediately deployed (Closset, 2013 online). At 1000hr on the 23rd August, after three days under intense bombardment, von Gallwitz mounts his main infantry attack, successfully overrunning the forts one by one and penetrating into the city itself. However the forts at d'Andoy, Malonne, and St. Héribert manage to hold out until the 24th, and those at Dave and Suaarlée until the 25th (ibid.). Having now fulfilled the Schlieffen-Moltke Plan's second strategic objective, all three northern German armies are free to move forward. First Army now divides its forces for (a) a drive against the Belgian National Redoubt at Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] to the north-east and (b) a simultaneous right-hook aimed at Maubeuge [map, etc.] to the south, von Bülow moves directly south against Lanrezac's [14th August<=>21st August] Fifth Army, and Max von Hausen's [henceforth simply von Hausen] [Wikipedia biography=>21st August] Third (Saxon) Army moves westward across the Ardennes Forest toward Dinant [maplink at 21st August]. These different axes of advance are noteworthy in the present context because they are setting the scene for the first involvement of the B.E.F. Note that First Army's southern thrust has to be due south rather than (as originally conceived) south-west in order to keep in contact with Second Army; thus it is that by 21st August von Kluck's forces are facing the B.E.F. at Mons rather than further west (at Rijsel/Lille, say) [sub-thread continues at 21st August (Frontiers Campaign) or jump to 24th August (Belgian Campaign) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]
1\textit{ASIDE}: The forts were in a ring because historically speaking the city had to be guarded against attack from east, west, and south [see, for example, the sieges of 1667 (24th May), 1692 (25th May), and 1695 (2nd July)]. However they had never been designed to cope with 10\textquotedbl", 12\textquotedbl", and 16\textquotedbl howitzer fire.

2\textit{ASIDE}: It is at this point that historians point to the breakdown of the Schlieffen masterstroke, and note critically that it was the changes introduced by von Moltke [5th August\textRightarrow{}26th August] which - basically - left the Germans short of an entire army on the right. These were the troops syphoned off to the Eastern Campaign. Our own reading of the situation on 21st August is that this missing army would - without excessively stretching its supply lines - have been able to push south along the Escaut valley on von Kluck's right, attack the B.E.F. on its left flank, forcing it to retreat eastward in disorder rather than southward in good order. Lanrezac and any surviving B.E.F. would then have been on the receiving end of a 4:1 German encirclement and there would have been nobody left for any Battle of the Marne. So in this respect we find it hard to disagree with the judgement that the Germans failed to "keep the right strong" [\texttt{<=1913 (4th January)}].

1914 [Thursday 20th August] Atrocity [III - Phase Three Belgian Atrocities (Andenne)]: [Continued from 5th August] A German massacre of 218 civilians at Andenne [map, etc.] (the youngest an infant of eight months and the oldest a man of 86 years) ushers in a new phase in the so-called Rape of Belgium. Now whole towns and cities are sacked with clear premeditation and for strategic psychological effect by whole regiments, rather than villages being punished more or less on the spur of the moment for local misdemeanours [sub-thread continues at 22nd August ...]. [\texttt{THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES}]

\textbf{ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY:} This new wave of German atrocities offered Louis Raemaekers [\texttt{<=16th August}] yet more propaganda material. Amongst the works which follow are "Order Reigns at Dinant", "The Shields of Rosselaere", "The Harvest is Ripe", and "Spoils for the Victors" [see these images at http://www.worldwar1postcards.com/louis-raemaekers.php]. [\texttt{THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES}]

********** "KITCHENER'S ARMY" - THE FIRST 100,000 **********

1914 [Friday 21st August] The government of Newfoundland resolves to create a national regiment of volunteers for service in Europe [continues on 4th October ...]. [\texttt{THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS}]

********** THE NEWFOUNDLANDERS PUT THEIR HANDS UP **********

1914 [Friday 21st August] The British War Office approves the establishment of six K1 divisions to bring to the field the first tranche of the service battalions presently being assembled. [\texttt{THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS}]

********** THE FIRST BRITISH CASUALTY **********

1914 [Friday 21st August] Following the appeal by John Redmond [16th August\textRightarrow{}1915 (21st December)] recruiting begins in nationalist Ireland for a new infantry division to be commanded by (the liberator of Mafeking) Mahon [1900 (17th May)\textRightarrow{}1915 (6th August)]. Amongst the service battalions thereby created are the 5th and 6th Bn Royal Irish Regiment, the 5th Bn Connaught Rangers, and the 6th and 7th Bn Royal Munster Fusiliers. Some time early in 1915 as it nears the end of its training the division will be earmarked for first footing in the Gallipoli Campaign [\texttt{<=1915 (25th April)}] [sub-thread continues at 3rd September ...]. [\texttt{THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD}][\texttt{THREAD = WW1 DIVISIONAL HISTORIES}]

********** THE FIRST BRITISH CASUALTY **********

1914 [Friday 21st August] Now well into their drive southward the forward units of von Kluck’s [20th August\textRightarrow{}22nd August] First Army are advancing on a 25-mile wide front from Leuze [map, etc.] to Soignies [map, etc.], and are particularly mobile on their right where von Kluck has
deployed selected elements of Georg von der Marwitz's [12th August=>6th October] II Cavalry Corps in order to threaten the B.E.F.'s escape route to the Channel ports should they choose to make a break for it. The B.E.F., meanwhile, having assembled in the countryside between Maubeuge [maplink at 20th August] and Le Cateau and now numbering five infantry divisions, is now moving northward. Smith-Dorrien's II [1879 (22nd January)<=22nd August] Corps¹ and the independent 19th Brigade are pivoting on the town of Landrecies [map, etc] and Sir Douglas Haig's I [1899 (30th October)=>22nd August] I Corps is pivoting on Wassigny [map, etc.]. In what little fighting occurred the B.E.F. takes its first casualty, namely a bicycled scout named John H. Parr² [Wikipedia biography and fuller story] [sub-thread continues at 22nd August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

¹ASIDE: Smith-Dorrien has only been in post a matter of hours following the death on 17th August of II Corps original commander Sir James Grierson [Wikipedia biography].

²ASIDE: Private Parr's death seems to have been overlooked in the heat of the administrative moment and will only be officially confirmed nine months later (Barnet Today, 11th August 2014). He was buried (by the Germans) at St. Symphorien Military Cemetery [map, etc.].

1914 [Friday 21st-22nd August] The Frontiers Campaign [VI - The Battle of Charleroi (Lanrezac Holds the River Line)]: [Continued from 18th August] This three-day battle for control of Charleroi [map, etc.] and the Sambre Valley west of Namur is fought between the French Fifth Army under Lanrezac [20th August<=22nd August] and the German Second and Third Armies under von Bülow [20th August=>22nd August] and von Hausen [20th August<=5th September], respectively, from the north and the east, respectively. Lanrezac manages to hold von Bülow for 48 hours on the Sambre, but is then forced to fall back when von Hausen attacks across the Meuse at Dinant [map, etc.], 20 miles south of Namur, thereby threatening his right flank [=>23rd August]. The battle is noteworthy in the present context because the B.E.F. has been coming up to support the French left and has been instructed to coordinate itself closely with Lanrezac [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 21st August] The Frontiers Campaign [VII - Enter the Sixth Army]: [Continued from preceding entry] Concerned at the success of the German counterattack toward Nancy [<=18th August] Joffre [16th August=>28th August] issues Instruction Particulière #18 establishing a new Sixth Army - colloquially the "Army of Lorraine" - out of a collection of handy reservist units in and around Verdun [map, etc.]. He appoints Michel-Joseph Maunoury [Wikipedia biography]=>29th August as its commanding general [sub-thread continues at 22nd August (Mons Campaign) and (Frontiers Campaign) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** BATTLE OF MONS BEGINS **********
********** FIRST BRITISH WARPLANE DOWNE**********

1914 [Saturday 22nd August] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [II - Digging in at Mons]: [Continued from 21st August] Needing to make its small size count, and having been asked to cover the French left following the Battle of Charleroi, the B.E.F. digs in along a 30-mile-long front from Condé-sur-l'Escaut [map, etc.] in the west, via Mons [map, etc.] in the centre, to the hamlet of Peissant [map, etc.] in the south-east. Moving west to east, 19th Brigade and three of Smith-Dorrien's [21st August=>23rd August] II Corps brigades, one after the other, hold the southern bank of the (east-west running) Mons Canal to Nimy¹ [map, etc.]. After Nimy II the last of II Corps' four brigades aligns itself diagonally away from the canal, heading south-east in the direction of St. Symphorien to join up with Haig's [21st August=>23rd August] I Corps, whose four brigades complete the line to Peissant. Beyond Peissant there is then a distinct gap before reaching the leftmost elements of Lanrezac's [21st August=>23rd August] Fifth Army centred south of
Charleroi. Probing north of this line a B.E.F. cavalry patrol of 4th Dragoon Guards engages the advanced cavalry screen of von Kluck's [21st August<=>23rd August] First Army at Soignies. Around the same time a British reconnaissance flight north of Soignies is brought down by anti-aircraft fire, killing the pilot Vincent Waterfall [no convenient biography] and his observer Charles G. G. Bayly [no convenient biography], making them the first Royal Flying Corps casualties of the war [sub-thread continues at 23rd August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1,2 ASIDE: Nimy is now the northernmost suburb of Mons, but was then an outlying village. A heritage marker [see image] by the side of the modern N6 marks the location of the Soignies engagement.

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: The official propagandist [=>2nd September] Sir Arthur Conan Doyle [16th August (ASIDE)<=>2nd September (ASIDE)] put it this way ...

"All France broke into a smile at the sight of them, and it was at a moment when a smile meant much to France" (p67) [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Saturday 22nd-23rd August] The Frontiers Campaign [VIII - The Battle of the Ardennes (The German Counterattack)]: [Continued from 21st August] Following the recent French gains between Neufchâteau [<=18th August] and Longwy [<=18th August] German counter-attacks force Ruffey's [<=18th August] Third Army back across the River Semois in the direction of (Fourth Army) Sedan and (Third Army) Verdun. Third Army suffer especially high casualties1 [sub-thread continues at 23rd August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1 ASIDE: French casualties on 22nd August alone are 27,000 killed (Hastings, 2013) (considerably more than the 21,000 British deaths on the first day of the Battle of the Somme); for the month of August as a whole 75,000 French will have died out of an estimated 300,000 "casualties" [remember that casualty figures are usually quoted including wounded and missing].

1914 [Saturday 22nd August] Atrocity [IV - Phase Three Belgian Atrocities (Tamines)]: [Continued from 20th August] Elements of von Bülow's [21st August<=>24th August] Second Army engage in a day-long orgy of reprisals against Belgian civilians in the Tamines [map, etc.] area, half way between Namur and Charleroi, killing 384 civilians in all. Roughly three quarters of these are executed en masse in the town's main square [details at http://san77.free.fr/chap05/chap05-1.htm] [sub-thread continues at 23rd August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES]

1914 [Sunday 23rd August] Action in the Pacific [V - The Japanese Join the War]: [Continued from 18th August] Under the terms of the Anglo-Japanese Alliance [=1902 (30th January)] Japan declares war on Germany and sets about occupying German possessions at Tsingtao and the Caroline, Northern Mariana, and Marshall Islands [sub-thread continues at 11th September ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Sunday 23rd August] The Frontiers Campaign [IX - The Battle of Charleroi (The German Counterattack)]: [Continued from 22nd August] Having held the line of the Sambre and the Meuse for 48 hours [=21st August] Lanrezac's [20th August<=>1700hr] Fifth Army is forced to fall back when von Hausen's [20th August<=>next entry but one] Third (Saxon) Army finally forces a bridgehead across the Meuse at Dinant [map 21st August<=] see separate entry on the atrocity at Dinant below], 20 miles south of Namur, thereby threatening his right flank. There follows a 13-day French withdrawal not just back across the border into France but all the way to St. Quentin [map, etc.], 60 miles to the south-west. The battle is noteworthy in the present context because the B.E.F. has been coming up to support the
French left and has been instructed to coordinate itself closely with Lanrezac [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Sunday 23rd August; dawn to 1700hr] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [III - The Battle of Mons]: [Continued from 22nd August] With his assault units now in position von Kluck's [22nd August=>24th August] First Army begins an all-out attack on the Mons sector. There is a fierce artillery bombardment, followed at 0900hr by a sustained infantry assault in which the Germans, advancing in the open, take heavy casualties. The small natural salient at Nimy, where the canal curves around the north of the village, takes fire from three sides and its defence is weakened by the fact that none of the four bridges there has been dynamited in advance. For the Germans one Oskar Niemeyer1 [no convenient biography] (posthumously) wins the first Iron Cross of the War for crossing the canal at Nimy in a small boat and then closing a swing bridge there so that his comrades in 84th IR could get across. He is shot dead shortly afterward. For the British two Victoria Crosses (one posthumously) go to the machine gunners covering the bridges. By 1700hr the constant German pressure forces Smith-Dorrien [22nd August<=1700hr] to abandon the canal line for a short tactical withdrawal. Haig's [22nd August<=24th August] I Corps, angled away to the south-east at the right of the line, is scarcely called into action this day2 ... [sub-thread continues at 1700hr ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1ASIDE: Niemeyer is buried [plot G1, R, 6] with many comrades (and the aforementioned Private Parr [=21st August]) in St. Symphorien Military Cemetery.

2ASIDE: To get at I Corps the Germans would have had to have mounted an assault through the town of Binche [map, etc.], but the axis of advance of the German First and Second Armies was such that this particular town fell into the psychological gap between the two - Von Kluck's First Army was ten miles or so too far to the west and von Bülow's Second Army was fully occupied pushing Lanrezac's Fifth Army back down the Sambre-Meuse "peninsula".

1914 [Sunday 23rd August] Atrocity [V - Phase Three Belgian Atrocities (Dinant)]: [Continued from 22nd August] Elements of von Hausen's [preceding entry but one<=5th September] Third (Saxon) Army engage in a day-long orgy of reprisals against Belgian civilians in the town of Dinant [map 21st August] area, killing 674 civilians in all [sub-thread continues at 25th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES]

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: On 26th August, as part of Britain's increasingly coordinated and cleverly targeted propaganda campaign, the Punch political cartoonist [Sir J. Bernard Partridge [Wikipedia biography]] summarised the events at Dinant in a cartoon ironically entitled "The Triumph of Culture" [reproduced at http://punch.photoshelter.com/image/I000034NFLFVNcKo]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Sunday 23rd August; 1700hr to 24th August early hours] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [IV - The Battle of Mons]: [Continued from dawn] Having held the line of the Mons canal for eight hours Smith-Dorrien's [dawn<=24th August] II Corps now fall back to an east-west line running from Elouges [no convenient factsheet] in the west to Frameries [map, etc.] in the east. Heavy fighting takes place on the British left at Elouges as the Germans attempt to get in around this end of the line. Edmund Allenby [1st Viscount Allenby]1919's [Wikipedia biography]26th August Cavalry Corps and its associated Royal Horse Artillery do their best at fire-fighting wherever the need is greatest. Then in the early hours orders are received from GHQ instructing a more general withdrawal toward Bavay [map, etc.], six miles west of the French strongpoint at Maubeuge [maplink at 20th August], the better to align with Lanrezac's [dawn<=24th August] retreating Fifth Army which is falling back within the Sambre-Meuse "peninsula" to a line from Thuin [map,
ASIDE - THE "ANGELS OF MONS": We shall shortly (=>5th September) be discussing reports of angelic intervention¹ in support of the British withdrawal from Mons. This is the moment referred back to in those reports. Clarke (2004) offers us a foretaste …

"… Private J. East of the Lincolnshire Regiment […] claimed in October 1915 to have been part of a rearguard left behind to allow the Third Division to retreat. As the Germans advanced on their position he saw: 'not two hundred yards in front of us … a long line of white forms, stretching from house to house. They were making mysterious motions with their arms. "Good lor!'” said one man, "what is it?" But no man answered. Yet every man felt in his own heart that the white barricade had been sent by some unseen power to protect that small body of English. We retired. No one spoke until we were well clear of Mons. I said they were angels, and not a man contradicted me” (p46). [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES] Clarke, D. (2004). The Angel of Mons: Phantom Soldiers and Ghostly Guardians. Chichester: Wiley.

¹RESEARCH ISSUE - ANGELIC INTERVENTION: There is little or no science of angelic intervention per se. You can either accept it as a genuine metaphysical problem (in which case there can be no science by definition) or else you can distrust it (in which case you instantly have problems with access to, and objectivity of, your data). Compare, for example, the prophetic “visions” of Marie Robine [278, 1387 and 1398] and Joan of Arc [<=1424]; see also the political prophecies of Cassandra [<=1906 (1st March [ASIDE])]. Then see the broader issue of political propaganda as a study area in its own right (=>2nd September [ASIDE]).

********** "PALS' BATTALIONS’ ARE BORN **********

1914 [Monday 24th August] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [VII - The Pals Battalions]: [Continued from 14th August] The British politician Edward G. V. Stanley, 17th Earl of Derby [1912 (27th June)<=>1915 (11th October)] suggests to the Parliamentary Recruitment Committee [<=6th August] that it would be a good idea to promote regional esprit-de-corps amongst recruits by raising battalions of "pals", that is to say, recruits from particular well-populated conurbations with their own sense of local identity [sub-thread continues at 25th August …]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

********** "A VERY TRYING DAY" **********

1914 [Monday 24th August; 0300hr] Britain’s Part in the Frontiers Campaign [V - First Day of Withdrawal from Mons]: [Continued from 23rd August] The 0200hr orders to withdraw from Mons only reach Smith-Dorrien’s [23rd August<=>25th August] II Corps headquarters at 0300hr because there is no telecommunications link in place, and, even then, the necessary arrangements take until late morning to put in place. The Germans, meanwhile, mount strong infantry assaults as early as 0515hr. The requirement is therefore both to fight and to run away at the same time, and that calls for considerable skill. Murland (2011) describes the painful practicalities involved …

"The foremost task was to clear the roads of the heavy unit and divisional supply transport which had been brought forward in expectation of an advance from Mons. This in itself was a major undertaking made all the more difficult by the swelling numbers of civilians taking to the roads and fleeing ahead of the advancing German army. Once the divisional transport was underway, Smith-Dorrien turned his attention to the logistics of moving his two divisions. In 1914 an infantry brigade on the march probably took up the equivalent of three miles of road and took in the region of two hours to pass a given point. In each brigade of field artillery - notwithstanding the ammunition and supply wagons - a team of six horses was required to pull each gun and with six guns per battery and three batteries per brigade the numbers soon begin to stack up! Along with the other transport, it was not uncommon for a field artillery brigade to have somewhere in the region of 750 horses. Whilst their comrades in the Royal Horse Artillery rode, the gunners in the Royal Field Artillery usually marched. Add to this the companies of engineers, field ambulances, and other support
At 1300hr the Germans finally overrun Frameries [maplink at 23rd August] on II Corps' right, followed at 1830hr by Audregnies [map, etc.] on its left. Nevertheless the rearguard actions buy time for the main columns to make progress southward. For a second day Haig's [23rd August<=25th August] I Corps escapes the heaviest fighting as it takes up positions in the villages to the east of Bavay [maplink at 23rd August]. The Germans, being exhausted themselves, mount no substantive pursuit after late afternoon but it will be long past midnight before the last of II Corps straggles into town. At GHQ, meanwhile, Sir John French [5th August<=4th September] has been closely monitoring the situation east of the Sambre where the retreat of Lanrezac's [23rd August<=25th August] Fifth Army is beginning to free up elements on the right of von Bülow's [22nd August<=25th August] Second Army, allowing them to swing westward in the B.E.F.'s direction. Concerned that his right flank is accordingly seriously threatened he orders a further withdrawal the following day to a line from (II Corps) Le Cateau[1] [map, etc.] to (I Corps) Landrecies [maplink at 21st August]. On the British left, thinly strung out across country toward Dunkirk [map, etc.] on the Channel coast, is a "Groupe de Divisions Territoriales" comprising some French reserve (61st and 62nd) and territorial (84th) divisions under Albert d'Amade [Wikipedia biography=>26th August], while additional mobile support is being provided by the French 1st Cavalry Corps under André Sordet [Wikipedia biography=>5th September]. The city of Rijsel/Lille [map, etc.] is deemed too far north of d'Amade's screen to be effectively defended and so it is abandoned to the approaching Germans without a fight [sub-thread continues at 25th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS] Murland, J. (2011). Retreat and Rearguard 1914: The B.E.F.'s Actions from Mons to the Marne. Barnsley: Pen and Sword.

1ASIDE: The main reason for selecting Le Cateau as a rallying point is that the B.E.F.'s newly detached 4th Division is there.
Vosges [map, etc.], where the nature of the topography greatly favours any defender. The French have therefore chosen to defend Épinal by defending the heights in front of it, that is to say, they have aligned their army parallel to the River Meurthe (which flows from the south-east into Nancy) rather than parallel to the Moselle (which flows into it from the south). A third river, the Mortagne, having arisen in the hills above Rambervillers [map, etc.], flows into the Meurthe at Lunéville [map, etc.], 15 miles upstream from Nancy, bisecting the angle made by the two other rivers. Upstream (= south-east) of Lunéville, therefore, you have to cross three rivers in quick succession - the Meurthe, the Mortagne, and the Moselle - in order to make progress westward. There is a thinly defended stretch of front near Charmes [Wikipedia biography], at the point where Second and First Armies meet, and it is here - colloquially the "Trouée de Charmes" (the "Charmes Gap") - that the Crown Prince directs the Schwerpunkt of his and Heeringen's advance. The Germans succeed in crossing the Meurthe on a front between Raon l'Étape [map, etc.], 20 miles south-east of Lunéville, and Fraize [map, etc.], 18 miles further upstream. At the southern end of this front they are then held by some dogged French defending on the Col de la Chipotte [map, etc.], where the modern D159B Raon-Rambervillers highway is at its highest), and so do not reach the Mortagne. In the north they cross the Mortagne at Gerbéviller¹ [map, etc.], only to be held on the crêtes [= crests/heights] East of Charmes. Ultimately the Battle of the Marne [=>5th September] will force the Germans to call off their offensive altogether, and they withdraw to a line through the Col de la Chapelotte [map, etc.], of which more in due course [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

¹ASIDE - THE GERBÉVILLER WAR CRIME: During the September retreat 60 civilian inhabitants of Gerbéviller are executed by the Germans.

FURTHER READING: We strongly recommend the pierreswesternfront blog for these battlefields at http://pierreswesternfront.punt.nl/content/2012/02/la-chipotte--la-chapelotte.

1914 [Tuesday 25th-28th August] Atrocity [VI - Phase Three Belgian Atrocities (Leuven/Louvain)]: [Continued from 23rd August] Elements of von Kluck's [24th August<=]later this day] First Army engage in a four-day-long orgy of reprisals against Belgian civilians and property in the Leuven/Louvain [map, etc.] area, killing 248 civilians in all, torching the mediaeval university library, and generally ravaging the town [see contemporary newsreel]. Conveniently ignoring the fact that the guilty ones were not the ones executed, the Belgians, the Germans will later claim, by employing hit-and-run attacks by irregulars, are simply not playing by the rules and only have themselves to blame [sub-thread continues at 4th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: The story was broken in Britain by Lord Northcliffe's [5th August<=27th August] Daily Mail on 31st August under the headline "Sack of Louvain - Awful Holocaust", and then inspired a wave of anti-German exposés, posters, editorials, a commemorative march entitled "Remember Louvain" by the established music-hall favourite John Neat [no convenient biography], and the by-now-inevitable Raemaekers cartoons. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES] [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES]

1914 [Tuesday 25th August] RMS Oceanic [8th August<=8th September] departs Southampton en route for patrol duty in the Faroes. She is under the command of William Slattery [no convenient biography], assisted by reservist navigator David Blair [Wikipedia biography=>8th September] and (late of RMS Titanic) Charles Lightoller [<=1912 (14th April)]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

********** I CORPS SHOWS ITS METTLE **********

1914 [Tuesday 25th August and overnight] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [VI - Second Day of Withdrawal from Mons/Battle of Landrecies-Maroilles]: [Continued from 24th August] [See firstly the prequel battle at 1637 (21st June)] The British withdrawal from Bavay [maplink at 23rd August] is complicated by the fact that the main southbound highways pass either side of the Forest of Mormal immediately south of the town. Haig's [24th August=>26th August] I Corps takes the roads east of the forest, via Aulnoye [map, etc.] and the Sambre river roads, to Landrecies [maplink at 21st August], whilst Smith-Dorrien's [24th August=>26th August] II Corps takes the roads west of the forest, via either Englefontaine or Solesmes, to Le Cateau [maplink at 21st August]. Now it so happens that von Kluck [earlier this day=>26th August] has expected the B.E.F. to fall back further than it has, and has identified Landrecies as a good way of by-passing the well-defended French strongpoint at Maubeuge1. He has therefore made Landrecies - strategically well-positioned astride the north-south Valenciennes-Laon highway where it crosses the Sambre River - the overnight objective for his 7th Infantry Division and Maroilles [map, etc.], three miles to the east, the overnight objective for his 5th Division. Reportedly neither German unit is expecting any significant opposition, the story being that they have positioned their field kitchens in the van to get the dinner on. Fortunately for the British the timing is such that both towns are occupied by the British a few hours ahead of the Germans, Landrecies by the rearguard battalions (2nd Bn Grenadier Guards and 3rd Bn Coldstream Guards) of Robert Scott-Kerr's [Wikipedia biography=>1st September] 4th (Guards) Brigade, and Maroilles by the rearguard battalions (1st Bn Royal Berkshire Regiment and 1st Bn King's Royal Rifle Corps) of Richard H. Davies's [Wikipedia biography] 6th Brigade. There follows a brisk late evening firefight followed by a British withdrawal in the early hours of the 26th August. Lanrezac's [24th August<=26th August (ASIDE)] Fifth Army, meanwhile, has been continuing its withdrawal from the Sambre-Meuse "peninsula", and is presently aligned on a 25-mile fighting front between Avesnes-sur-Helpe [map, etc.], only 10 miles to the east of Landrecies, and Regniowez [map, etc.] to the east-south-east of there. Unfortunately for the B.E.F. the axis of this withdrawal is aligned from north-east to south-west, so as the French withdraw von Bülow's [24th August<=26th August] pursuing Second Army is automatically drawing ever closer to I Corps on the British right flank [sub-thread continues at next entry...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1ASIDE: Remember that one of the operational principles of both the original Schlieffen Plan [<=1894] and the watered down Schlieffen-Moltke Plan [<=1906] was that after Liège and Namur any lesser strongpoints such as Maubeuge were to be lightly invested, by-passed, and dealt with later.

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: Some time after the battle [=22nd October] reports - very possibly spurious - will emerge of a German atrocity against prisoners-of-war taken during the British withdrawal from Landrecies. This is the moment referred back to in those reports. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES] [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES]

********** II CORPS PLAY REARGUARD AGAIN **********

1914 [Wednesday 26th August; early hours and throughout the day] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [VII - The Battles of Le Cateau and Le Grand Fay]: [Continued from preceding
This battle is fought for control of the left and centre of the B.E.F. line as it stands after the withdrawal of Haig's Cavalry Corps. The Suffolks hold out until around 1430hr, but by then only manage to extricate one officer and 111 men out of their initial strength of over 800 (Murland, 2011). Fortunately for the B.E.F. as a whole, von Kluck mounts no serious pursuit, because (it is subsequently reported) he has anticipated a retreat westward rather than southward [in the fullness of time this will prove an expensive misjudgement - Ed.]. Ahead and to the east of II Corps, meanwhile, I Corps are already south of the triangle of villages at Maroilles [maplink at 25th August], Le Grand Fayt [map, etc.], and Marbaix [map, etc.], and have deployed the 2nd Connaught Rangers under Alexander W. Abercrombie [no convenient biography=>27th August] into this triangle as rearguard. By the end of the day, however, the area is running alive with troops from the German X Reserve Corps under Günther von Kirchbach [Wikipedia biography=>27th August] and in the absence of timely orders to withdraw¹ the Connaughts suffer heavy losses [sub-thread continues at 27th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]


1914 [Wednesday 26th August-6th September] The Frontiers Campaign [XI - The Siege of Maubeuge]: [Continued from 24th August] This battle is fought between elements of von Kluck's First Army and von Bülow's Second Army in and around Maubeuge [maplink at 20th August] under Georges Desaleux [no convenient biography]. As at Liège and Namur, Maubeuge is protected by a ring of forts¹. The French are determined to make them work long and hard for any victory (the town sits astride von Kluck’s lines of communication). The local German commanders are Karl von Einem [Wikipedia biography=>17th December] and Johann von Zwehl [Wikipedia biography] who have to await the arrival of the super-heavy siege artillery no longer needed at Namur. The bombardment begins on 29th August, progressively reducing the defences and bringing about a final surrender on 6th September. The French suffer some 5000 casualties, with a further (estimated) 33,000 troops taken as prisoners of war [sub-thread continues at 28th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

¹ASIDE: The highway from Aachen, Germany, to Paris is more or less a straight line through the cities of Liège, Namur, and Charleroi in Belgium and then Maubeuge, St. Quentin, and
Compiègne in France. Following discussions in 1874 (=1874) the first two of these cities were ring-fortified by the Belgians, and Maubeuge by the French. Mons screens Maubeuge from the north.

1914 [Wednesday 26th August] While taking on coal at Rio de Oro [map, etc.], Spanish Sahara [= modern Western Sahara], the German armed merchant cruiser Kaiser Wilhelm der Grosse [7th August => sink this day] is interrupted by the sighting of the British heavy cruiser HMS Highflyer [Wikipedia biography]. There is a brief firefight until the German ship runs out of ammunition, whereupon she is scuttled. Around the same time the German light cruiser SMS Magdeburg [Wikipedia shipography => 13th October] accidentally runs aground in the Gulf of Finland. When stormed by a Russian Navy boarding party shortly afterward she is found not to have destroyed her copies of the SKM [= Signalmittel der Kaiserlichen Marine = the German Navy's wireless telegraphy codebooks], and one of these will subsequently be passed to the British Naval Intelligence Division (=5th October), where it greatly facilitates the Admiralty's ongoing cryptanalytical effort. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT BATTLE **********

1914 [Wednesday 26th-30th August] The Eastern Campaign [I - The Battle of Tannenberg]: This battle is fought between the 230,000-man Russian Second Army under Alexander Samsonov [Wikipedia biography] and the 150,000-man German Eighth Army under Paul von Hindenburg [Wikipedia biography] and Ludendorff [as5th August]. The outcome is a catastrophic Russian defeat, with massively disproportionate casualties (their Second Army is as good as annihilated). The battle is noteworthy in the present context for demonstrating the need to keep one's wireless transmissions properly encoded, the Germans having listened in to Russian orders transmitted en clair throughout the battle. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS] [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS] [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

ASIDE: This is the army which - had von Moltke [as20th August =>29th August] not watered down the original Schlieffen Plan [=1894] - could have reinforced von Kluck's First Army on its drive into Belgium and conceivably brought about the annihilation of both the B.E.F. and Lanrezac's [25th August == 29th August] Fifth Army, thereby winning the war for the Germans - see 20th August (Battle of Namur [ASIDES]). It was the German listening stations at Thorn and Königsberg - established before the war by Walter Nicol'ai's Abteilung IIIb [=1913] - which did the damage.

1914 [Thursday 27th August] Action in the Pacific [VI - Tsingtao Blockaded]: [Continued from 23rd August] A Japanese fleet under Sadakichi Kato [Wikipedia biography] sets up a screening blockade across the German fortress port of Tsingtao [map, etc.]. The defence is led by Alfred Meyer-Waldeck [Wikipedia biography] [<=31st October] [sub-thread continues at 2nd September …]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Thursday 27th August] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [VIII - The Retreat to St Quentin and Guise]: [Continued from 26th August] Following the withdrawals from Le Cateau and Landrecies the previous day Smith-Dorrien's [26th August => 28th August] II Corps and some newly arrived units destined for III Corps [=31st August] spend 27th August slowly reassembling at St. Quentin [maplink at 23rd August] and along the road to Ham [map, etc] 13 miles to the south thereof (where they can cross the Somme River), while 20 miles to the east Haig's [26th August => 28th August] I Corps to the south of Guise [map, etc]. Again the main fighting involves the rearguard units, and there is a particularly significant action on I Corps' front when three companies of 2nd Bn Royal Munster Fusiliers make a valuable 14-hour stand against von Kirchbach's [=26th August] X Reserve Corps at Étreux [maplink at 2th August] [sub-thread continues at 28th August…]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Thursday 27th August] Recently arrived in Edinburgh from Denmark a German agent named Carl Hans Lody [Wikipedia biography] starts sending intelligence reports to a known German agent in (neutral) Sweden. Unfortunately for him all such material is opened and inspected by MI5, who promptly place him under surveillance [sub-thread continues at 2nd October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Thursday 27th-28th August] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [IX - Nanny Knows Best]**: [Continued from 25th August] The British Prime Minister Asquith [6th August<=1915 (15th April)] is asked in Parliament as to the rules of disclosure enforced by the Press Bureau [25th August<=28th August]. He replies ...

"The Official Press Bureau is the mouthpiece through which communications relative to the progress of naval and military operations are made public by the Admiralty, the War Office, and other public Departments concerned. The principle upon which information is given to the public is that all information which can be given without prejudice to the public interest shall be given fully and given at once. [...] The Director of the Bureau [1] has access for consultative purposes to the First Lord of the Admiralty, the Secretary of State for War, and, in matters of special doubt, to myself. [...] It was unanimously agreed that it was not desirable to add [trained journalists] to the staff of the Bureau, but that it was desirable that they should be associated with the work carried on by the cable censors. Steps are being taken to carry this out, and also to coordinate and harmonise, as far as possible, the principles upon which the censorship of Press cables and of other Press information, respectively, is carried out" (Hansard, 66:150-152).

One Member of Parliament, Sir Arthur B. Markham, 1st Baronet [Wikipedia biography=>31st August] is particularly persistent with his questioning, being seriously concerned "that military operations have been published in French, German, and Belgian papers a week before they have been published in this country" (ibid.) [sub-thread continues at 29th August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1. **ASIDE**: The "Director of the Bureau" referred to here is the aforementioned Frederick E. Smith [1st Earl of Birkenhead]1922 [1910 (?)th June]<=30th August].

2. **ASIDE - SIR ARTHUR MARKHAM AND WALES**: Markham was a highly respected industrialist-politician, with "Markham Collieries" in Derbyshire, South Yorkshire, and the South Wales Valleys. The Markham Colliery in South Wales was sunk in 1913 by the Tredegar Iron and Steel Company [<=1907], and a new village - "Markham" - was built to house its workers [more on Markham nowadays]. After his death in 1916 his trustees funded the annual Arthur Markham Memorial Essay Prize, administered by the University of Sheffield until discontinued in 1993, and open only to mineworkers.

3. **ASIDE**: We suspect that this is a recording error and should read "American", as per Markham's re-statement of his argument in Parliament on 31st August (Hansard, 66:454-511; 2100hr).


1914 [Friday 28th August] **The North Sea Campaign [I - Battle of Helgoland Bight]**: This battle is fought in the Helgoland Bight [map, etc.] as (initially) a surprise Royal Navy attack on the daily German torpedo boat1 patrol in that area. The attack is mounted
(initially) by a mixed submarine and destroyer force out of Harwich, Essex. It is commanded by (the 8th Submarine Flotilla) Roger Keyes [1st Baron Keyes][1943 [Wikipedia biography] and (the destroyers) Sir Reginald Y. Tyrwhitt [Wikipedia biography]. Keyes' flagship is the destroyer HMS Lurcher [Wikipedia shipography] whilst Tyrwhitt's is the light cruiser HMS Arethusa [Wikipedia shipography]. This is what the British have in mind ...

ASIDE - KEYES' PLAN: Keyes' submarines had been patrolling the Helgoland Bight since the beginning of August as part of the Royal Navy's blockade of German North Sea ports, and had noted that the routine German torpedo boat patrol had grown rather too predictable. Keyes had therefore suggested to the Admiralty that the patrol be jumped one day by his submarines and the 1st and 3rd Destroyer Flotillas out of Harwich working together, but with three levels of heavier units from further afield on hand to entrap such heavier units as the Germans might then send out to assist. Arthur H. Christian [Wikipedia biography] is put in overall command of the destroyers and the submarines, and has as back-up the six slow and largely obsolete heavy cruisers2 of the 7th Cruiser Squadron under Henry H. Campbell [some biography at http://www.dreadnoughtproject.org/ tfs/index.php/ Henry_Hervey_Campbell]. The second level of back-up is would be the six cruisers of the 1st Light Cruiser Squadron under William Goodenough [Wikipedia biography]=1916 (31st May), the Humber-based 2nd Battlecruiser Squadron HMSS New Zealand [<=1911 (1st July)] and Invincible [<=1906 (2nd April)] under Sir Gordon Moore [Wikipedia shipography]=1915 (23rd January), and the Scotland-based 1st Battlecruiser Squadron HMSS Lion [1912 (4th June)<=1915 (23rd January)], HMS Queen Mary [Wikipedia shipography], and HMS Princess Royal [Wikipedia shipography]<=1915 (23rd January) under Beatty [1913 (1st March)<=15th December]. Once these two feeder forces join forces the five battlecruisers will then manoeuvre together. The third level of back-up would be the Dreadnoughts of the Grand Fleet itself, drawn down from their anchorage at Scapa Flow. Precise timing of arrival of the three forces was essential, and was calculated according to the tides and the estimated steaming-up times for the equivalent German cruisers and capital ships.

ASIDE - THE GEOGRAPHY: The battle takes place in the area of the North Sea known as the German Bight (map, etc.). 30 to 50 miles west of the Helgoland Islands. The Jade (pronounce as "yarder") Bight naval base and anchorage at Wilhelmshaven and the adjacent Weser Estuary at Bremerhaven are both due south, the Elbe Estuary at Cuxhaven is south-east, and the Ems Estuary at Emden is south-south-west. The Jade Bight has a massive sandbar across its mouth preventing heavy vessels from passing over it at low tide. British literature will log events in Greenwich Mean Time; German in Central European Time, which is one hour ahead (GMT+1).

This is how the battle unfolds (standardised to GMT where possible) ...

0653hr Arethusa (Tyrwhitt) at the head of the 16 ships of the 3rd Destroyer Flotilla and HMS Fearless [Wikipedia shipography] under William F. Blunt [some biography at http://trove.nla.gov.au/ndp/del/article/21313446] at the head of the 15 ships of the 1st Destroyer Flotilla arrive on station and between 0720hr and 0757hr engage the closest German torpedo-boats, which immediately fall back toward their own escorts, the light cruisers SMSs Stettin [Wikipedia shipography] (three funnels, 24 knots) (commanded by Karl A. Nerger [Wikipedia biography]) and Frauenlob [Wikipedia shipography] (two funnels, 21 knots) (commanded by Konrad Mommsen [Wikipedia biography]). The torpedo boat supply tender SMS Hela [Wikipedia shipography] is also with the support group but, not being a front-line warship, is instructed to hang back. As Frauenlob draws closer Arethusa exchanges fire with her and although both ships suffer several hits one of those on Frauenlob kills her captain and command team and she is forced to break off the action and return to port. Stettin, meanwhile, is engaged by Fearless and her destroyers and is hit once before they turn away. Not yet fully steamed up she is unable to give chase.

ASIDE: Alerted by wireless telegraphy the senior German commander on this part of the coast, Franz von Hipper [Wikipedia biography]=3rd November, immediately scrambles a number of reinforcing units including the eight light cruisers individually introduced below and his own 1st German Battlecruiser Squadron, comprising SMSs Moltke [1911 (28th March)<=15th December], SMS Von der Tann [<=1911 (4th February)], and SMS
Seydlitz [1913 (22nd May) => 15th December]. However not only will it take several hours to get these reinforcements ready for sea but the British have also - either by good fortune or careful planning (reports differ) - carefully timed their attack to take place at low tide, the Jade sandbar thus delaying their departure even longer.

0815hr Beatty releases Goodenough's cruisers to assist Tyrwhitt but, since the latter has not received the signal advising of their approach, they are very nearly fired upon by Tyrwhitt's destroyer flotillas and actually (but unsuccessfully) fired upon by Keyes' submarines. Beatty holds off his battlecruisers awaiting intelligence.

0910hr The German torpedo boat V-187 [no convenient shipography] is surrounded and sunk with the loss of 24 lives. Around the same time Siettin - now capable of full speed - rejoins the battle and exchanges fire with the British destroyers for a few minutes before they withdraw.

0930hr SMS Cöln [Wikipedia shipography => sinks this day] (ship commanded by Hans Meidinger [no convenient biography]; fleet by Leberecht Maass [Wikipedia biography => dies this day]), leads SMS Strassburg [Wikipedia shipography] (commanded by Heinrich Retzmann [Wikipedia biography]), SMS Ariadne [Wikipedia shipography] (two funnels; 21 knots) => sinks this day (commanded by Hans Seebohm [no convenient biography]), Stralsund [Wikipedia shipography] (commanded by Viktor Harder [no convenient biography]), and Kolberg [Wikipedia shipography] (commanded by Wilhelm Widenmann [Wikipedia biography]) out of Wilhelmshaven. Since visibility is poor they fan out as they head north. Around the same time SMS Mainz [Wikipedia shipography => sinks this day] (commanded by Wilhelm Paschen [no convenient biography => dies this day]) departs the Ems Estuary.

1020hr Arethusa stops to make repairs, with Fearless and her attendant 1st Destroyer Flotilla standing by. Strassburg chances upon Arethusa at 1100hr but is driven off by Fearless and the destroyers.

*********** BEATTY TIMES HIS RUN ***********

***** THE BATTLECRUISER CONCEPT TESTED AT LAST *****

***** THE BATTLECRUISER CONCEPT TESTED AT LAST *****

1130hr Conscious that time is slipping away Beatty judges that the moment is right to commit his battlecruisers, ordering them up to full speed [26-27 knots] and turning so as to close with the action from the northwest. They steam in line astern, Lion in the lead, then Queen Mary, Princess Royal, Invincible, and New Zealand.

*********** MAINZ GOES IT ALONE ***********

1130hr Mainz engages Arethusa and the 3rd Destroyer Flotilla but the sound of firing soon attracts three of Goodenough's light cruisers. Mainz lays a smokescreen which screens her from the cruisers but then runs straight into Fearless and the 1st Destroyer Flotilla. In the resulting mêlée Mainz inflicts severe damage on three of the destroyers until a lucky British hit jams her rudder. Unable to make evasive manoeuvres she is now hit repeatedly and at 1220hr Paschen gives the order to abandon ship only to be killed a few moments later. Lurcher comes alongside and takes off 348 survivors, amongst whom Tirpitz’s [4th August <= 1916 (15th March)] son Wolfgang.

*********** THE TRAP IS SPRUNG ***********

1230hr Strassburg and Ariadne now take station on Cöln to finish off Arethusa, but no sooner have they done so than Beatty's battlecruisers emerge out of the mist ...

*********** "HOW UTTERLY EARTHQUAKING" (eyewitness) ***********

1237hr Strassburg turns away but Cöln receives two salvos from Lion which leave her "burning furiously and in a sinking condition". Beatty then makes off after Strassburg.

ASIDE: In his report of the battle a few days later Beatty stresses that for two fast ships at full speed on non-parallel courses this was "very creditable" shooting (Beatty, 1914, full text online at http://www.naval-history.net/WW1Battle-Battle_of_Heligoland_Bight_1914.htm). Readers who have followed the story of fire control computing in Part 9 [begin at 1901 and follow the forward pointers] will not be surprised to learn that the Lion-class was equipped with the latest fully approved Dreyer Fire Control Table, namely the Mark III [=1914 (4th August)]. We presume, therefore, that
both Lion and Cöln were on straight courses in the seconds before firing, otherwise Lion would probably have missed. HMS Iron Duke had just been fitted with the even newer Mark IV Dreyer Table [factsheet at http://dreadnoughtproject.org/tfs/index.php/Dreyer_Table_Mark_IV*] for evaluation, but was not present at this battle.

1225hr The last of the reinforcements, SMSSs Danzig [Wikipedia shipography] and München [Wikipedia shipography] depart the Elbe Estuary.

1325hr Unable to catch Strassburg Beatty's battlecruisers make another, closer, pass by the damaged Cöln, accumulating enough new hits to sink her. Maass goes down with his ship. Many of her crew abandon ship successfully but no rescue is possible because of submarine activity in the area. As a result all but one of those who have survived thus far will now die of exposure. Only one man - a stoker named Adolf Neumann [no convenient biography] - will survive the delay before being picked up three days later.

**ASIDE:** We have been unable to track down what happened to Stoker Neumann. Suffice it to say that for obvious reasons he will have been a prime candidate for the sort of "survivor syndrome" we have talked about on and off [e.g., <=573; 1798].

The battlecruisers now turn on Ariadne and Stettin, scoring several heavy calibre hits on the former but losing the latter in the mist. Further hits then reduce Ariadne to a wreck and Beatty leaves her to sink. Danzig and Stralsund attend to pick up survivors and Ariadne finally sinks at 1525hr.

1410hr The tide has now risen enough to permit Moltke and Von der Tann to leave the Jade anchorage to add their weight to the proceedings, Seydlitz following after a short delay. However visibility is now very poor and fearing a bear in a cage\(^4\) event neither side seeks further action.

The overall outcome is a clear enough British victory on the day, although the battle is more noteworthy as a learning experience for both sides. For the British it demonstrates the sheer technical difficulty coordinating the tactical decision making of so many individual ships' captains (Tyrwhitt, remember, had not received the message informing him that he would have reinforcements coming up behind him, and, indeed, had nearly attacked them when first they were detected). For the Germans it was a serious psychological set-back, for only the timely arrival of poor visibility had prevented a defeat being an out-and-out disaster; and on their own doorstep as well. This fact was not lost on Kaiser Wilhelm II [19th August<=>27th October], who now instructs the Commander-in-Chief of the High Seas Fleet, Friedrich von Ingenohl [Wikipedia biography]=>15th December, to inform him personally every time it is going to be sent into action [sub-thread continues at 3rd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

\(^1\)ASIDE: The German torpedo boats in question were "ocean-going" vessels comparable in range, size, and armament to the Royal Navy's destroyers.


\(^3\)ASIDE: Namely the sister-ships (all four funnels; 25 knots) HMSs Southampton [Wikipedia shipography], Falmouth [Wikipedia shipography], Liverpool [Wikipedia shipography], Birmingham [Wikipedia shipography], Lowestoft [Wikipedia shipography], and Nottingham [Wikipedia shipography].

\(^4\)ASIDE: A "bear in a cage" is modern American slang for getting lost in a thunderstorm with poor visibility and suddenly finding yourself only yards from a touched down tornado. For tornado simply read enemy ship looming out of the mist.
1914 [Friday 28th August] **Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [IX - Smith-Dorrien Crosses the Somme]**: [Continued from 27th August] Covered by the available elements of Allenby's [26th August=>1st September] Cavalry Corps Smith-Dorrien's [27th August=>29th August] II Corps retires south of the River Somme at Ham [maplink at 27th August] [sub-thread continues at 1st September …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 28th August] **The Frontiers Campaign [XII - Two Important Meetings]**: [Continued from 24th August] Joffre [21st August=>29th August] pays a visit to Lanrezac [26th August=>29th August] at the latter's Fifth Army headquarters at Marle [map, etc.] halfway between Guise [maplink at 27th August] and Laon [map, etc.] and with a display of "Olympian anger" (Spear) [14th August=>1917 (22nd May)], 1929) demands that Fifth Army mount a spoiling counter-attack in the Guise area. Lanrezac immediately sends a liaison officer to Haig's [27th August=>29th August] temporary I Corps headquarters at Mont d'Origny [map, etc.], half-way between St. Quentin and Guise, in order to coordinate I Corps' potential contribution to the forthcoming attack [sub-thread continues at 29th August …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 29th August] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [X - Allison and Belloch Start Selling the War]**: [Continued from 27th August] Today's issue of the weekly news magazine *Land and Water*, recently acquired by the Australian-born press and advertising entrepreneur J. Murray Allison [no convenient biography=>2nd September], front-pages an article on and by its equally recently appointed editor Hilaire Belloc [Wikipedia biography=>2nd September]. On naval issues the magazine will draw heavily on the knowledge of John F. T. Jane [Wikipedia biography] (of *Jane's Fighting Ships* fame) and [our old friend - Ed.] the naval gunfire expert Arthur Pollen [1912 (?7th March)=>1916 (31st May)]. In today's *Times*, meanwhile, one "Henry Arthur Jones" [perhaps the dramatist of this Wikipedia biography] has the following letter published …

"Yesterday morning came the news of a serious set-back to our armies. Yesterday afternoon […] every lawn tennis court in the space near me was crowded by strapping young Englishmen and girls. *Is there no way of shaming these laggards?*

We shall shortly be seeing how the Establishment systematically goes about doing precisely this [sub-thread continues at 30th August …]. [THREAD = WW1 PROPAGANDA]

*************** THE SCHLIEFFEN PLAN FINALLY ABANDONED ***************
*************** THE SCHLIEFFEN PLAN FINALLY ABANDONED ***************
*************** THE SCHLIEFFEN PLAN FINALLY ABANDONED ***************
*************** THE SCHLIEFFEN PLAN FINALLY ABANDONED ***************
*************** THE SCHLIEFFEN PLAN FINALLY ABANDONED ***************

1914 [Saturday 29th August] **The Frontiers Campaign [XIII - The Battle of Proyart]**: [Continued from 28th August] This battle is fought at and around Proyart [map, etc.], on the southern bank of the River Somme 20 miles east of Amiens [map, etc.], between the right wing of von Kluck's [26th August=>next entry] First Army feeling its way westward along the Somme Valley and (north of the river) elements of d'Amade's [26th August=>18th September] territorial screen and (south of the river) the gathering strength of Maunoury's [21st August=>3rd September] Sixth Army. Although Proyart has to be temporarily abandoned the firmness of the French defence goes some way toward convincing von Kluck that there is no easy "right hook" route to Paris [sub-thread continues at next entry …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 29th August] **Foch** [18th August=>5th September] is replaced as commander of XX Corps on the Nancy front by Maurice Balfourier [Wikipedia biography] and put in command of a newly constituted Ninth Army based on a line from Sézanne [map, etc.] via Fère-
1914 [Saturday 29th-30th August] The Frontiers Campaign [XIV - The Battle of St. Quentin and Guise]: This battle is fought between Lanrezac's [28th August<=1st September] Fifth Army supported by Haig's [28th August<=3rd September] I Corps and elements of von Bülow's [26th August<=5th September] Second Army threatening the line Ham [maplink at 27th August] to Guise [ditto]. The main French thrust is by its XVIII Corps under Jacques de Mas-Latrie [Wikipedia biography] replaced 4th September toward St. Quentin [map at 23rd August], but suffers heavy casualties because von Bülow's reconnaissance assets successfully detect their approach. The hero of the hour is Louis Franchet d'Espèrey [Wikipedia biography] commander of I Corps, whose right flank attack at Guise makes far better progress. The French and British resume their withdrawal on 30th August but will have inflicted sufficient losses on von Bülow's spearhead units not to be too closely pursued. Despite the high losses within XVIII Corps the overall outcome is therefore generally assessed as an Allied victory. Moreover since the attack results in von Kluck's [preceding entry<=1st September] First Army being ordered to realign its axis of attack more closely to von Bülow's it does away with any residual pretence on von Moltke's [26th August<=4th September] part to be following the Schlieffen Plan [<=1894] [sub-thread continues at 4th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1 Aside: Smith-Dorrien's [28th August<=3rd September] II Corps plays no substantive part in this battle, being well on its way southward out of Ham. This will take it through Noyon [map, etc.] and then across the River Oise at Pontoise-lès-Noyon [two miles south-east of Noyon along the modern D934] to a temporary headquarters in and around the Château at Cuts [three miles further].


1914 [Sunday 30th August] Islam in WW1 [I - A Problem Noted]: The German Ambassador to the Ottoman Empire Hans von Wangenheim [Wikipedia biography] telegraphs Berlin counselling that the religious devotions of Muslim prisoners-of-war should be positively supported in German prisoner-of-war camps (Höpp, 1997 online) [sub-thread continues at 25th October ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** THE TRUTH HURTS **********

1914 [Sunday 30th August] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XI - Caught Red-Handed]: Following a month of "cheerful nonsense" in the British newspapers The Times publishes a tolerably accurate summary of the Great Retreat prepared by its correspondent in France Arthur Moore [no convenient biography], in which the B.E.F. is described as "a retreating and broken army". The article has not just been approved by the Director of the Press Bureau, Frederick E. Smith [27th August<=31st August] but has been in part actually written by him. Here is an indication of the tone of the original feature ...

"Amongst all the straggling units that I have seen, flotsam and jetsam in the fiercest fight in history, I saw fear in no man's face. It was a retreating and broken army, but it was not an army of hunted men. [...] Our losses are very great. I have seen the broken bits of many regiments" (http://spartacus-educational.com/FWWtimes.htm).

... and here is the closing paragraph provided by Smith ...
** PARAGRAPH #1 IN STUDENT EXERCISE AT 31ST AUGUST **

"To sum up, the first great German effort has succeeded. We have to face the fact that the British Expeditionary Force, which bore the great weight of the blow, has suffered terrible losses and requires immediate and immense reinforcement. The British Expeditionary Force has won indeed imperishable glory, but it needs men, men, and yet more men" (ibid.).

Apart from failing to mention any French contribution to the proceedings Smith's paragraph is factual enough, but is it, philosophically, the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth. Parliament, with censorship already on the agenda [<=27th August], now calls upon Smith (himself a Member of Parliament, of course) to justify his intervention before the House of Commons the following afternoon [sub-thread continues at 31st August ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Monday 31st August] The B.E.F. now has enough recently arrived units in France to create a new corps-level entity consisting of 4th Division and the soon-to-arrive [=>10th September] 6th Division [Wikipedia factsheet=>10th September] under Thomas D'Oyly Snow [Wikipedia biography=>12th October] and [Sir]1915 John L. Kier [Wikipedia biography], respectively, and numbered III Corps, promoting Sir William Pulteney [Wikipedia biography=>1st September] from divisional commander (6th Division) to corps commander. Once 6th Division arrive the entire pre-war home service British Army will be in France, and a wave of foreign service units is already being assembled as 7th Division [=>3rd September]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

********** ON TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR **********

********** ON TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR **********

********** ON TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR **********

********** ON TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR **********

********** ON TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR **********

1914 [Monday 31st August] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XII - Reporting Rules Debated]: [Continued from 29th August] Following a number of allegations of inconsistency, overwork, and/or plain sloppiness (for details of which see Hansard, 66:454-511), and greatly concerned at the previous day's article in The Times [<=above], the House of Commons debates the structure and purpose of the Press Bureau [28th August<==>7th September].

ASIDE: The respected British cognitive scientist [Sir]1948 Frederic C. Bartlett [Wikipedia biography=>later this entry] was asked in 1940 to explain "propaganda for democracy" to a general readership. He began by summarising the propaganda effort in WW1, as follows ...

"During the War of 1914-1918 it took two or three years of acrimonious dispute and hard experiment before the departments which planned policy, those which carried it out, and those whose job it was to justify the policy and its execution in the eyes of the world, and to prepare for further developments, arrived at even a rather uneasy co-ordination. [...] The basis of all effective propaganda in a democracy is a reliable news service [... however in] war not even the most democratic State can, or ever will be able to, get on without a form of censorship" (Bartlett, 1940, pp133-135).


The debate begins with a speech by Markham [<=27th August] and Markham's speech begins by quoting a letter from the editor of The Times explaining not just that his newspaper had followed the censorship rules to the letter but that the revisions had been made personally by the Director of the Press Bureau, Frederick E. Smith [30th August<==>28th September]. Markham then pursues the more general complaint that reporting is failing to create within the country "a human interest" in the war, singling out Smith's
In the organisation (his brother Harold Smith [Wikipedia biography]) for specific criticism...

"I first take exception to the constitution of the Bureau. [Frederick E. Smith] has been appointed manager of this Bureau, and his brother the Member for Warrington (Mr. Harold Smith) has been appointed the secretary. [...] I have letters from newspaper editors who complain that the hon. Member for Warrington acts more like one of the Kaiser's staff officers in his dealings with the Press. [...] The Prime Minister has said that it is his intention to go into the country to speak to the people and to let them know the danger this country is in, and that it is the duty of every man who is able to take up arms for his country at this time. I can assure [Frederick E. Smith] that he could do no more great service towards accomplishing that end than if he at once took steps to put this Bureau in a position which would enable the country to take a human interest in what goes on. All human interest is entirely vanished from the statements which have appeared in the Press. The human element does not appear. The Government, I think, ought to have appointed a Minister in charge of this Bureau. If it is necessary for the Prime Minister to go about the country speaking of the necessity of obtaining recruits, why should there be this action of the Government in silencing information? It is killing recruiting in the country. I do not think [Frederick E. Smith] has been in the country, and I do not think he knows the feeling in many districts where the people have no idea of the seriousness of the position which has arisen. [Detailed instances omitted] A trained journalist knows what the public wants. Members of this House who have had no experience in journalism cannot say what the public require [...] I would also suggest that there should be on this Committee Lord Roberts [1912 (22nd October)<= d. 14th November], representing the military side, and the Noble Lord the Member for Portsmouth (Lord C. Beresford [Wikipedia biography]), representing the Admiralty. Both of these Noble Lords have held the highest commands in the country, and, acting in conjunction with a Minister of the Crown, and with trained journalists, they would constitute a Bureau in which the public could have confidence. [Further detailed instances omitted] The people of this country want the truth, the whole truth, and are not afraid to be told the whole truth" (Hansard; ca. 1930hr).

The lawyer, newspaper baron, and Unionist-minded Liberal Party Member of Parliament for Mile End, London, Harry Levy-Lawson [1st Viscount Burnham]1919 [Wikipedia biography] then speaks in (Frederick E.) Smith's defence, but concedes the need for journalistic input...

"Personally, I have expressed the opinion privately, and I now must express it publicly, that it was great misfortune that expert writers were not allowed under proper supervision to accompany the Army in the field. [Otherwise] rumour would take the place of narrative of fact, and that every petty incident as told by a private soldier or a non-commissioned officer who is, no doubt, speaking the truth as he saw it - but he could only see a very limited part over a narrow area - would be taken as an accurate account of what was happening in this terrible and long-drawn battle. That has happened, but it is not the fault of [Frederick E. Smith] that those correspondents were not there" (Op. cit; ca. 1958hr).

The Conservative and Unionist Member of Parliament for Devizes Sir Basil E. Peto [1st Baronet]1927 [Wikipedia biography] even reminds the House what had been promised when, on 6th August, the Press Bureau had firstly been announced...

"At the time the Press Bureau was established we were promised, by the First Lord of the Admiralty [Winston Churchill [30th July<=>28th September]] - I think his words were 'a steady stream of reliable information'. It was felt throughout the country that it was a somewhat novel experiment for a country such as ours to be engaged in war and have no direct information from competent and experienced Press correspondents at the front, but we were told we were to have a steady stream of reliable information" (Hansard; ca. 2015hr).

Smith then replies at great length, vigorously defending both his brother and the rules preventing the publication of information of operational significance. The Press Bureau, he explains, is constantly in touch with "the room of high authority" at the
War Office checking on whether this or that snippet of information might potentially assist the enemy. His first major point is that much of the reporting silence so far has been to protect the B.E.F. from attack during its crossing of the Channel, thus ...

"Whenever I have to deal with questions of high military policy [...] in the first place I obtain advice from the soldiers who are in my office. They are in telephonic communication with a room of high authority at the War Office, where very distinguished officers of high position conduct cognate work. Therefore, in the first place, inquiry is conveniently made from the soldiers' room to the room of high authority, as I have said, at the War Office. [...] The first complaint of the hon. Baronet [Markham] - and it is a complaint which has been generally made in the country - was that we had suppressed for an unreasonable period the fact that the Expeditionary Force was intending to embark, had embarked, and had disembarked. [...] We were most expressly told [...] that Lord Kitchener [12th August<=28th September] would contemplate with great anxiety the sending of so large a force [...] unless every step that could be taken in this country was taken to secure secrecy in the matter" (Hansard; ca. 2057hr).

He then gives further details of his working relationship with the War Office,

"Every day, and sometimes twice a day, I have gone to the War Office [...] and asked persons of the highest consequence and position whether any news had been received which we could publish. I have done that every day. And it is not true to say that no news has been given. News has been given, I agree, vague and often sketchy, until the information we issued on Sunday, but here again I have only one defence, and it seems to me to be a completely adequate one. The information which was drawn up as to the position of the Army was drawn up in every case by soldiers of highest experience and authority. They drew it up with the knowledge, which they certainly had very clearly, that the public were deeply concerned to have all the information that could safely be given at the earliest possible moment. And when I am told [that in the War Office's] judgement - and one may put it perfectly plainly, in the judgement of Lord Kitchener himself - that what was being published was all that could be published without risk or injury to the public service, I say, as long as I discharge my present office, that is sufficient answer for me" (Hansard; ca. 2125hr).

Finally Smith turns to the specific issue of the 30th August article in The Times ...

"I had been asked by Lord Kitchener, in the course of various discussions I had had with him, to, as far as possible, assist his object, which was, of course, to obtain recruits for his Army, and under these circumstances, having read this article and excised all parts of it which dealt with the movement of troops, I suggested that reference might be made at the end of the article to the effect that what was wanted was, 'Reinforcements, reinforcements, and still more reinforcements' (Hansard, ca. 2148hr).

By now it is late in the day and the debate starts to wind up, conceding that censorship is "at the best a thankless task", thanking Frederick E. Smith for his "public spirit" in taking the job on, and trusting "that in future fuller and more complete accounts will be able to be given". Only the Liberal Party's Arthur J. Sherwell [Wikipedia biography] and the Irish Parliamentary Party's John Dillon [<=1901 (25th February)] still have energy to pursue the fundamental issues. Sherwell probes what exactly Smith knew and when he knew it ...

"I think what [Frederick E. Smith] has shown very convincingly to the House is that while he himself, personally, is not to blame for what has or what has not taken place recently, he has said enough to show that he has been placed in a perfectly false and altogether impossible position. [...] He has really missed the vital point in connection with the publication of those articles. He said, 'If they were true, had we any right to suppress them?' Are we to understand that the statement published yesterday afternoon on the authority of Lord Kitchener was a statement drawn up for the Press Bureau [by the newspapers themselves]? I assume that [the information contained] was in the knowledge of the Government prior to [its publication]" (Hansard; ca. 2208hr).
And Dillon follows up with a line of argument which historians¹ will still be developing a century later ...

"... the Press Censor, when he had those articles before him, must have known that they were false, and were calculated, as any person of ordinary intelligence must have known, to create alarm and panic in this country. To my amazement the Press Censor stood up and admitted to the House that he sanctioned the publication of those articles, and made additions to them, and he admitted that they were to be taken by the country as an incitement to recruiting. In other words, we have it stated, by the Press Censor himself, that he considers the publication of false news a reliable method of recruiting in this country. Can any hon. Member pretend, after what has taken place in this Debate, that the Censor, unless disgracefully treated by the War Office, did not know yesterday that the news was grossly misrepresenting all the facts? Either the article was untrue or Lord Kitchener's reply, published the same afternoon, [...] is untrue. They cannot both be true; they are absolutely contradictory. We have heard the Press Censor state today that [...] he made his addition in order that it might provide a ground for recruiting in this country and sending out reinforcements. That is to me the most amazing admission that I have ever heard made in this House. [...] One thing I should say to the Government and it is this. If they want to secure the cooperation of the Press and the public in carrying out the really necessary censorship they ought to be very careful to treat [both] with fair play, common sense, and indulgence [...] because as the War goes on it will be impossible to maintain such secrecy" (Hansard; ca. 2212hr).

********** A BRITISH SECRET ELITE? **********


The debate now ends, but outside in the real world, meanwhile, the latest edition of The Times (presumably agreed by Frederick E. Smith prior to his leaving to attend the debate) has been busily "turning truth on its head" (Docherty and Macgregor, 2014 online [at https://firstworldwarhiddenhistory.wordpress.com/2014/08/12/] by now playing down the bad news and playing up the British Army’s overall performance to date ...

"The British Army has surpassed all the glories of its long history, and has won fresh and imperishable renown. It has inflicted terrible losses on the German army and has repeatedly held its own against tremendous odds. Though forced to retire by the overwhelming strength and persistence of the foe, it preserves an unbroken if battered line..." (The Times, 31st August 1914; cited in Docherty and Macgregor (2014 online).

We shall be following the activities of the Press Bureau closely over the coming months, during which time it will gradually emerge that today's debate has actually done little to resolve the reporting problem. If anything, the spotlight of public scrutiny will have simply driven the conspiring parties even further into their crevices. Two days later, for example, despite the calls for experienced writers of fact to be involved, a panel of writers of fiction will be convened instead [sub-thread continues at 2nd September …]! [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

RESEARCH ISSUE - TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR: There are three fundamental problems in assessing "the truth" of any description of historical events. The first problem is that our
brains in general, and words and ideas in particular, are simply not equal to the historian's task. Our brains have evolved to deal with a few simple truths at a time and when the overall truth is an amalgam of many such lesser truths we create and rely instead on a memory for gist. Explanatory histories, in other words, will always and inevitably be over-simplifications of what actually took place.

**ASIDE**: The textbook demonstration of the fore-shortening of narrative memory in circumstances such as those described above is a 1920 paper by [Sir] Frederic C. Bartlett entitled "Some Experiments on the Reproduction of Folk-Stories", in which he attempts to piece together the deep "schematic" representation of a narrative from the inevitably foreshortened attempts to reproduce an original telling. As material for his experiments Bartlett uses a number of obscure page-length folk tales. In the method of "repeated reproduction", a given individual will re-tell an original story as accurately as they can, firstly after 15 minutes, again after a week, and again after longer periods. Incidental detail is rapidly lost, reducing the story to a short paragraph of gist. Errors and imaginations, once included, tend to persist. Emotive content [injuries, deaths, etc.] is relatively well preserved, perhaps reflecting "a deep-rooted and widespread tendency to dramatisation".

The second problem is that of individual position-taking. This problem is further complicated by the fact that it is decidedly two-edged, thus: (a) As far as the author of an historical narrative is concerned s/he can only ever present his/her current understanding as fact, and that current understanding risks being far from objectively accurate, shaped as it inevitably will be by personality and actual knowledge of the topic at hand, and (b) as far as that author's eventual readers are concerned they can only ever incorporate a gist of the narrative [see first problem above] into their own current understanding, which, too, risks being far from objectively accurate. The third problem is that of ethnic/political/religious position-taking. Again this is a two-edged problem, thus: (a) As far as the author of an own-sided historical narrative is concerned s/he will typically present a politically correct interpretation of the event(s) in question. However as far as that author's readers are concerned it depends whose side they are on: the home readership will share the author's perception of correctness, but a foreign readership is likely to reject as unreliable everything, including items of objective truth, sometimes with historically tragic outcomes. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

**STUDENT EXERCISE - TRUTH IN TIME OF WAR**: We have taken the two target paragraphs mentioned above and opened them up as sequences of separate propositions. Here is PARAGRAPH #1, Frederick E. Smith's final paragraph of 30th August. Check each constituent proposition against the objective facts set out in the entries for the Great Retreat [24th August<=>4th September] and the Battle of the Marne [=>3rd/4th/5th September], and decide for yourself whether we have an acceptable attempt at an historical narrative or not [our own comments are parenthesised] ....

**the first great German effort has succeeded** [dubious, because the German offensives had achieved a lot less than the Germans had been anticipating]

**we have to face the fact that the British Expeditionary Force, which bore the great weight of the blow** [ignores role of the French]

**has suffered terrible losses** [true, but there is no absolute definition of "terrible" as opposed to "significant", say, or "dreadful", "catastrophic", etc., etc.]

**and requires immediate [reinforcement]** [true]

**and immense reinforcement** [true, but there is no absolute definition of "immense" as opposed to "significant", say, or "commensurate", "truly immense", etc., etc.]

**the British Expeditionary Force has won indeed imperishable glory** [too vague to score]

**but it needs men, men, and yet more men** [true, but there is no absolute definition of "more"]

And here is PARAGRAPH #2 above for comparison ...
the British Army has surpassed all the glories of its long history [too vague to score]
and has won fresh and imperishable renown [too vague to score]
it has inflicted terrible losses on the German army [true, but there is no absolute
definition of "terrible" as opposed to "significant", say, or "dreadful", "catastrophic", etc., etc.]
and has repeatedly held its own against tremendous odds [true]

Now read the Companion Resource on the use of "argument by adjective" and "argument by adverb" as common techniques of deliberate deception. We count 14 "gratuitous" (and therefore designed to persuade non-objectively) adjectives in these pieces. Find them (and any we have missed). [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Tuesday 1st September] Present Location of Welsh Units: Here is the status of the British Army’s essentially Welsh units at the end of the first month of the war...

ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS (the ancestral 23rd Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is about to arrive back in Britain from Malta [=>3rd September]. 2nd Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] is in France attached to the B.E.F.’s independent 19th Infantry Brigade. 3rd (Reserve) Bn is active at Wrexham and Pembroke Dock. The 1st Bn has started to mobilise its four affiliated territorial battalions, namely 1/4th [(Territorial)]1 (Denbighshire) Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Wrexham, 1/5th [(Territorial)] (Flintshire) Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Flint, 1/6th [(Territorial)] (Caernarvonshire and Anglesey) Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Caernarfon, and 1/7th [(Territorial)] (Merioneth and Montgomery) Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Newtown. The first of the regiment’s “New Army” “service battalions”2, the 8th [(Service)]3 Bn, is also forming at Wrexham.

1,3 ASIDE: The "(Territorial)" and "(Service)" designators were more often than not omitted, being common knowledge at the time.

2 ASIDE - RESERVES, TERRITORIALS, AND NEW ARMY: There is an important but to civilians often subtle distinction between reserve battalions, territorial battalions, and service battalions. The structures were created by the Army reorganisations of (the Cardwell Reforms) 1870-1871 [<=1870 (3rd March)], (the Childers Reforms) 1880-1881 [<=1880 (28th April) and 1881 (1st July)], and (the Haldane Reforms) 1905-1907 [<=1905 (10th December)], and are as now summarised...

Firstly each regiment fielded two substantive battalions - 1st and 2nd - of regular soldiers, all young, fit, full-time, experienced, well-equipped, well-trained, and properly paid under (such as it was in those days) a contract of employment. These two battalions traditionally rotated between home and imperial service every couple of years. Secondly there was one (sometimes two) garrison town reserve battalions - 3rd (and 4th) - of full-time older and less fit regulars with the names and addresses of regular army reservists on contractual retainers, who could turn out at short notice to replace losses in the first two battalions due to retirements, sickness, accidents, or (in time of war)
battle casualties. **Thirdly** there were a number of regional "territorial" and "yeomanry" ...

**ASIDE - YEOMANRY:** The yeomanry regiments of 1914 were territorial in structure but identified as "yeomanry" to reflect regimental traditions dating to historically earlier local volunteer cavalry units.

... battalions of part-time would-be-or-once-were regulars on contractual retainers who trained in their free time, often alongside regulars, but who generally lacked both the most modern equipment and battlefield or foreign service experience. And finally there were in time of war an effectively unlimited number of "service" battalions containing whoever put their hand up and met the ordained age and fitness criteria.

It follows therefore (a) that a "Reserve" battalion would never actually go to war (because it was no more than a garrison-town administrative-ceremonial unit responsible for delivering properly prepared reinforcements to the front-line units), (b) that the number of territorial battalions available was generally predetermined, (c) that territorial battalions factually would stand little chance in battle against an elite enemy unit (and service battalions - mainly civilians in khaki - even less chance, at least until they had learned their trade), (d) that the speed at which service battalions could be put into the field depended on the availability of barracks, equipment, drill sergeants, officers, etc., and (e) that the identities and service records of those who would be mobilised into the territorial and yeomanry regiments had been known for some time, whereas those volunteering for the New Army were almost always previously civilians.

**SOUTH WALES BORDERERS** (the ancestral 24th Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is in France with the B.E.F.'s I Corps as part of the 1st Division's 3rd Infantry Brigade. 2nd Bn is on foreign service, and will shortly be supporting the Japanese siege at Tsingtao [=>31st October]. 3rd (Reserve) Bn has relocated from Brecon to Pembroke Dock. The 1st Bn has started to mobilise the first of its three affiliated territorial battalions, namely 1/1st ([Territorial]) (Brecon) Bn at Brecon. The first of the regiment's "New Army" "service battalions", the 4th ([Service]) Bn, is also forming at Brecon.

**THE WELCH REGIMENT** (the ancestral 41st and 69th Regiments of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is on foreign service in India. 2nd Bn is in France with I Corps as part of the 1st Division's 3rd Infantry Brigade. 3rd (Reserve) Bn is active in Cardiff and Barry. The 1st Bn has started mobilise its four affiliated territorial battalions, namely 1/4th ([Territorial]) (Glamorgan)(Cyclist) Bn at Pontypridd, 1/6th (Territorial) (Glamorgan) Bn at Swansea, and 1/7th (Territorial) (Cyclist) Bn at Cardiff and Barry. The first of the regiment's "New Army" "service battalions", the 8th ([Service]) (Pioneer) Bn, is also forming in Cardiff.

1**ASIDE:** 1/4th Bn included companies raised within a 30-miles radius, e.g., B-Company at Pembroke, C-Company at Cardigan, and F- and G- Companies at Llanelli. For the [West Wales War Memorial Project](http://www.lanefona.org) coverage of the particular history of this unit click [here](http://www.lanefona.org).

**THE (TERRITORIAL) WELSH ARMY**
1 - INFANTRY
We have already listed nine territorial battalions affiliated to the three regular Welsh regiments. Alongside these we now need to mention the Welsh catchment territorial battalions of the two nearest English regiments, namely ...

**THE CHESHIRE REGIMENT**
The 1st Bn Cheshire Regiment has mobilised all four of its affiliated territorial battalions, namely 1/4th ([Territorial]) Bn at Birkenhead, its 1/5th ([Territorial] (Earl of Chester's) Bn at Chester, its 1/6th ([Territorial]) Bn at Stockport, and its 1/7th ([Territorial]) Bn at Macclesfield.
THE HEREFORDSHIRE REGIMENT
The (all-territorial) Herefordshire Regiment has mobilised its 1/1st [(Territorial)] Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Hereford.

... and last but not least we need to mention the fourth major Welsh infantry regiment, the all-territorial ...

THE MONMOUTHSHIRE REGIMENT
The (all-territorial) Monmouthshire Regiment has mobilised its 1st [(Territorial)] (Rifle) Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Stow Hill, Newport, its 2nd [(Territorial)] Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Osborne Road, Pontypool, and its 3rd [(Territorial)] Bn[53rd (from 5th August)] at Abergavenny. All three battalions are presently encamped near Northampton.

RESEARCH ISSUE - CHILDREN OF THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION IN WW1: Readers will now start to note that the recruiting stations reflect the areas of urbanisation which had grown up during the heyday of Welsh heavy industry. This is less true of the historically more ancient regular regiments which have more rural garrison towns such as Caernarfon, Brecon, and Newtown. The coal ports of Cardiff and Barry recruit into the Welch Regiment (see above), as do the mining towns of the Rhondda; Newport recruits into the Monmouthshire Regiment.

To give an overriding sense of identity to the Welsh and border counties territorial battalions these units have been administered since 1908 under the banner of the 53rd (Welsh) Division of the Territorial Force [Wikipedia factsheet]. This division has spent August mobilising into a three-brigade administrative structure reflecting catchment geography, namely the 168th (North Wales) Brigade, the 159th (Cheshire) Brigade, and the 160th (Welsh Border) Brigade. It was the speed of mobilisation of these, and other, initially homeland defence units which allowed the last two pre-war regular divisions to be released in late August to join the B.E.F. in France.

'ASIDE - NUMBERING OF TERRITORIAL BATTALIONS: To put it frankly the numbering/naming system for territorial battalions is complicated, so we shall defer explaining the logic thereof until the second Monthly Update at the beginning of October, when fewer other things need to be said.

II - MOUNTED

THE (REGULAR) "WELSH ARMY"
Lloyd George's vision of a regular "Welsh Army" has not yet been formally announced [=19th September] and the Welsh Guards have not yet been created [=1915 (26th February)]. There are, however, four regular army cavalry units with a Welsh pedigree by name (but not by catchment area as such). These are the 3rd Dragoon Guards, the 5th Dragoon Guards, the 10th Hussars, and the 12th Royal Lancers. All had a history of royal patronage by either the Prince or the Princess of Wales, but had garrison towns in England.

*************** END OF MONTHLY UPDATE, AUGUST 1914 ***************
1914 [Tuesday 1st September] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [X - Belgium in Distress]: [Continued from 3rd August 1914] During the German occupation of Belgium many refugees fled south into France or crossed the Channel to Britain. Nevertheless 7 million Belgians are presently under German occupation, and because their country has always traded manufactured goods for food they are abruptly unable to feed themselves. It therefore makes good sense, now that the queues at the U.S. Embassy in Brussels have gotten shorter, to re-direct Heineman's repatriation staff onto the Belgian food problem. The Embassy's American Relief Committee is accordingly absorbed into the wider Comité Centrale de Secours and d'Alimentation [literally = Central Committee of Rescue and Food], run by (a friend of Hoover's) Millard K. Shaler, ...

ASIDE: For more on Shaler we recommend GOOGLE BOOKS Americans in Occupied Belgium, browse <Shaler> (5 hits).

the Belgian industrialist Ernest Solvay [check him out], and (two more old friends of Hoover's) the bankers Émile Franqui [check him out] and Chevalier Emmanuel de Wouters [see 20th March 1899]. The new committee's central problem is how to bring in humanitarian aid to Belgian citizens without it being requisitioned by the occupying German Army and becoming thereby contraband of war to be sunk by the Royal Navy. Over the ensuing weeks, the necessary diplomats and military contacts are consulted, and procedures put in place to have humanitarian aid ring-fenced and independently monitored [sub-thread continues at 10th October 1914 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL PRACTICE AND SHARP PRACTICE]

1914 [Tuesday 1st September] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [X - The Last of the Rearguard Actions]: [Continued from 28th August] Having been given a 48-hour breather by the French victory at the Battles of St. Quentin and Guise [<=29th August], the B.E.F. suddenly finds itself across the path of a surprise advance by cavalry elements of von Kluck's [29th August<=3rd September] First Army intent upon crossing the Oise River south of Compiègne [map, etc.] and then sweeping south-eastward to get in behind Lanrezac's [29th August<=3rd September] Fifth Army. As day breaks the B.E.F. is strung out across the northern side of the Compiègne-Soissons-Meaux triangle, with the Aisne to the north and the Oise to the west. On the left Pulteney's [31st August<=5th September] still incomplete III Corps (presently only 4th Division and the stand-alone 19th Infantry Brigade, which latter includes the 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [9th August<=3rd September]), are loosely holding the Oise river line at and around Verberie [maplink at 31st August]. In the centre Smith-Dorrien's [29th August<=5th September] II Corps is deployed on a line between Crépy-en-Valois [map, etc.] and Croyolles [no convenient factsheet]. And on the right Haig's [29th August<=5th September] I Corps, having crossed the Aisne at Soissons [map, etc.], is deployed in the woods and villages north of Villers-Cotterêts [map, etc.], Allenby's [28th August<=5th September] Cavalry Corps is doing its best to cover the gaps. The German attack on the British left takes place down the Compiègne-Néry B-road [= the modern D932A], and sets the German 4th Cavalry Division [Wikipedia factsheet] under Otto von Garnier [Wikipedia biography] against the British 1st Cavalry Brigade under Charles J. Briggs [Wikipedia biography] at Néry [map, etc.]. The units which bear the brunt of this German attack are the 2nd Dragoon Guards, the 5th Dragoon Guards, and the 11th Hussars, supported by L-Battery Royal Horse Artillery [Wikipedia factsheet]. The encounter begins at 0540hr with a rapidly organised German horse artillery barrage (12 guns) which (from only half a mile away) inflicts crippling early casualties to both men and horses in the British lines. With its horses dead, injured, or bolted, the survivors of L-Battery manage to manhandle three of its 13-pounders into action, but only one of these - No. 6 gun - stays operational for any significant length of time. In fact for a crucial hour this gun
single-handedly supports the dismounted cavalrmen, and by concentrating their fire on the German gun-crews they manage to neutralise the artillery threat.

**ASIDE:** The "Néry Gun" is presently on display at the Imperial War Museum, London [see the IWM factsheet at http://www.iwm.org.uk/ collections/item/object/30025225]. In hindsight von Garnier's artillery had been brought too far forward for its own good, leaving its crews and horses vulnerable not just to artillery counter-fire but to small arms fire as well. Had there been an immediate British collapse this would have been a victory for offensive risk-taking; but once the British organised themselves it was the German guns who suffered, and without their horses they had to be abandoned. The present author has been unable to find out how long the initial German rapid-fire bombardment lasted given that their ammunition re-supplies were miles to their rear and they were working only with the six dozen or so shells carried in their limbers [long-suffering readers will recall that the Prussians had worked hard on horse artillery design and tactics back in the 18th century, testing out their ideas at, for example, the Battle of Kunersdorf (<=1759 (12th August))]. An officer of 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers had an opportunity to inspect the captured guns as they were taken south, describing them as "highly finished" pieces. He was particularly taken by the decoration on the breech which read *Ultima Ratio Regis* [= "the ultimate argument of kings"] (Dunn, 1938, p43). We commend the Wikipedia factsheet on Shrapnel Shell for explaining the design aspects of this particular method of delivering death from above. **WAR ART:** It will take the artist Fortunino Matania [Wikipedia biography=>14th November] only a few weeks to celebrate L-Battery's stand in a lithograph entitled "An Undying Story of British Valour"[details at 14th November].

Briggs, meanwhile, has been organising a counterattack by the nearby 4th Cavalry Brigade and its supporting I-Battery, together with the nearest available infantry formation, namely 19th Brigade's 1st Bn Middlesex Regiment, and this successfully drives the Germans back ["The 4th German Cavalry Division was to all intents and purposes destroyed" (Spears, p327)]. **The German attack on the British centre** follows the several north-south country roads between the Aisne and Crépy-en-Valois, but is called off in the early afternoon because its field artillery is too far to the rear. **The German attack on the British right** follows the highway southward from Vic-sur-Aisne [= the modern N81]. This brings the German III Corps up against the 4th (Guards) Brigade under Robert Scott-Kerr [<=25th August], deployed east-west through the Forest of Retz north of Villers-Cotterêts and supported by 6th Brigade in and around the town itself. The encounter here begins at 0600hr and under sustained pressure the British are forced back onto, and then past, Villers-Cotterêts, finally reforming at Betz [map, etc.] that evening. Taken as a whole, the day's rearguard actions will subsequently be assessed as highly successful, thus: "Once more von Kluck has been prevented from achieving his objective. Had he been opposed less stoutly, it is doubtful if the Fifth Army could have escaped" (Spears, p328) [sub-thread continues at 3rd September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 2nd September] **Action in the Pacific [VII - The Tsingtao Landings]:** [Continued from 27th August] The Japanese now support their naval blockade of the German fortress port of Tsingtao by starting to land an army 20 miles up the coast at Longkou [map, etc.]. The army is led by [Baron]1916 Kamio Mitsuo [Wikipedia biography=>31st October] and will now spend several weeks shipping in its heavy equipment and putting out outposts toward the German defences at Tsingtao. The Japanese will be joined on 23rd September by 2nd Bn South Wales Borderers [factsheet at http://www.royalwelsh.org.uk/downloads/B07-02-SWB-WW1-2ndBattalion.pdf=>31st October] under Nathaniel W. Barnardiston [no convenient biography] and four Companies of 36th Sikh Regiment [Wikipedia factsheet] [sub-thread continues at 31st October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 2nd September] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XIII - The War Propaganda Bureau is Formed]:** [Continued from 31st August] Conscious of the weaknesses in its story-telling ability exposed by the House of Commons debate of 31st August
[<q.v.>, the British government now has **Charles Masterson** [<=6th August] invite 25 leading British authors to the new **War Propaganda Bureau** [6th August => 22nd September], Wellington House, London, to discuss how they might best turn their individual literary skills toward helping the war effort. Amongst those present are (in alphabetical order)...


Several popular writers, including the leftist playwright **George Bernard Shaw** [Wikipedia biography] and the entire **Bloomsbury Group** [Wikipedia factsheet], are specifically NOT invited, being considered likely risks to secrecy. The adventure-crime writer **Edgar Wallace** [Wikipedia biography] is not in evidence on the list but by Christmas will nevertheless have turned out "Smithy and the Hun" [Amazon-Kindle], "Famous Scottish Regiments", "Sir John French", "Heroes All: Gallant Deeds", and "The Standard History of the War". The aforementioned **William T. le Queux** [<=1906 (19th March)] is also not apparent on the list but does his bit for the war effort by turning out a new invasion fantasy novel each month for the rest of the year. His 1914 titles include "The White Lie" [full text online], "The German Spy, A Present-Day Story", and (in collaboration with Edgar Wallace) "The War of the Nations". Of the known propagandists Hardy seems to have been first off the mark after only three days with his hits-the-spot "**Men Who March Away**" [<=5th September]. The British propaganda effort at this time will be closely studied after the war by **Adolf Hitler** [no biography needed], who will later claim to have learned much from it¹. Only a century after the events will it emerge that at least one of the authors approached had the strength of character to see the proposal for what it might be and turn it down² [sub-thread continues at 5th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

¹ASIDE - HOW BRITISH WW1 PROPAGANDA WORKED: The science of political propaganda is a fascinating research issue within the broader science of persuasive communication in general, and therefore shares many of that broader science's techniques [Wikipedia factsheet] and competing explanatory theories. More specifically, the Canadian academic **Nick Milne** [academic homepage] at http://arts.uottawa.ca/english/people/milne-nick] has studied the British WW1 propaganda effort and in Milne (2014 online) he identifies the following three tricks of the trade …

(1) As far as practicable Wellington House's War Propaganda Bureau worked closely with commercial publishing houses (a) because it made the system largely self-funding [i.e., people paid for the privilege of being inveigled], and (b) because, having paid for the material, readers internalised that much more effectively the values espoused within it.

(2) The written word was complemented by posters, photos, pop-songs, slideshows, collectible postcards, cigarette cards [<=1895], and such-like. [The war, in modern parlance, was thoroughly “merchandised” - Ed.]
(3) The Bureau especially prized items of "personal propaganda", that is to say, testimonials from well-known and well-respected members of society not directly associated with the military. And because spontaneous testimonials of this nature were few and far between the Bureau went out of its way to engineer them, systematically identifying and involving (at its height) "tens of thousands of major figures in dozens of countries worldwide", providing them with carefully prepared "on message" briefing copy. Indeed, it is "entirely conceivable", Milne points out, that a humble clerk in Westminster would be indirectly writing sermons for preachers five thousand miles away (op. cit).

The government took the Bureau’s job very seriously, and funded its expansion accordingly. In 1917 the Bureau was reorganised within the Foreign Office as the Department of Information [=1917 (9th February)] under the author-diplomat John Buchan [1st Baron Tweedsmuir]1935 [Wikipedia biography=1915 (??th February)], and in 1918 it was upgraded again into the Ministry of Information [=1918 (4th March)] under the Anglo-Canadian press baron William M. Aitken [1st Baron Beaverbrook]1917 [Wikipedia biography]; Aitken, indeed, actually (and with some justification) claimed that he directed the thought of the world. One modern German assessment has it that in WW1 the Germans "had no chance", being completely outclassed in the no-lies-barred war for hearts and minds (Grund, 2014 [online at http://www.welt.de/kultur/kunst-und-architektur/article130491754/Bei-der-Propaganda-hatte-Deutschland-keine-Chance.html]).

2 ASIDE: Milne also draws our attention to an ethical stand taken by the Irish poet William B. Yeats [Wikipedia biography=15th September].

1914 [Thursday 3rd September] The Eastern Campaign [II - The Fall of Lemberg/Lviv]: [Continued from 26th August] Despite their setback at Tannenberg in northern Poland [<=26th August] the Russians have been making solid gains against the Austro-Hungarians further south in Galicia [map, etc.], and now capture the cathedral city of Lemberg/Lviv [map, etc.] [sub-thread continues at 7th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Thursday 3rd September] Irish Home Rule [XXVII - The 36th (Ulster) Division]: [Continued from 16th August] Recruiting begins in loyalist Ireland for a new infantry division to be commanded by [Sir]1922 Oliver Nugent [Wikipedia biography=1916 (1st July)] [sub-thread continues at 11th September ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 DIVISIONAL HISTORIES]

1914 [Thursday 3rd September] The 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [9th August<=4th October] arrives back in Britain from Malta and is assigned, along with other returning units, to 7th Division [Wikipedia factsheet=4th October], assembling in and around the New Forest. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS] [THREAD = WW1 DIVISIONAL HISTORIES]

*********** LAST HOURS OF THE GREAT RETREAT ***********
*********** LAST HOURS OF THE GREAT RETREAT ***********
*********** LAST HOURS OF THE GREAT RETREAT ***********
*********** LAST HOURS OF THE GREAT RETREAT ***********

1914 [Thursday 3rd-4th September] Britain's Part in the Frontiers Campaign [X - The Retreat Slows]: [Continued from 1st September] The 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [1st September<=5th September] arrives at Lagny [map, etc.] and digs in. Here is one officer's account ...
1914 [Thursday 3rd September] The First Marne Campaign [I - The Germans Overreach Themselves]: French aerial reconnaissance reports indicate that Von Kluck's First Army, having advanced the 60 miles from the Oise in only 48 hours, is crossing the Marne at Château-Thierry. Since this is fully 60 miles east of Paris it indicates that von Kluck is continuing his attempt to get in behind the French Fifth and Fourth Armies. More ominously for him, he has by the same token also started to run dangerously ahead of his own supporting supply columns and is beginning to expose his western flank to Maunoury's Sixth Army concentrating to the north-east of Paris. With so much at stake, Joffre takes the opportunity to replace the exhausted Lanrezac as commanding general of the "discouraged but not demoralised" (Spears, p385) Fifth Army with Franchet d'Espèrey. [continues next entry ...].

ASIDE: Sir John French was delayed en route due "partly to tyre trouble and partly to blocks on the road caused by refugees" (Spears, p388).

At GHQ, meanwhile, the commander of the Sixth Army Maunoury and the commander of the Paris Garrison Joseph S. Gallieni are meeting (in French's and Wilson's absence) with the B.E.F.'s Chief of Staff Sir Archibald J. Murray to discuss a simultaneous joint B.E.F.-Sixth Army counter-offensive toward the Ourcq. [details in Spears, pp397-399, if interested]. Torn between their responsibilities to the Sixth Army on the B.E.F.'s left and Fifth Army on its right (and with negotiations being carried out by deputies rather than principals) there results much confusion as to each army's precise axis of advance and initial local objective.

ASIDE: Spears shows the differences in understanding in Maps XIV(A) and XIV(B) (pp392-393) and the actual position in Map XV (pp416-417).

Not yet fully aware of the extent of this confusion Joffre continues his deliberations and at 2200hr issues Instruction Générale No. 6, as follows (Spears' translation1) ...

"The movements to be carried out on the 5th will be: (a) All the available forces of the Sixth Army to be north-east of Meaux ready to cross the Ourcq between Lizy-sur-Ourcq and May-en-Multien in the general direction of Château-Thierry. The available elements of the Cavalry Corps which are at hand will be under the orders of General Maunoury for this operation. (b) The British Army established on the front Changis-Coulommiers facing east will be ready to attack in the general
The direction of Montmirail [map, etc.]. (c) The Fifth Army, closing in slightly on its left, will establish itself on the general line Courtacon [map, etc.-]Esternay [map, etc.-]Sézanne [maplink at 29th August], ready to attack south-north. Louis Conneau's [Wikipedia biography] General Foch will cover the right of the Fifth Army by holding the southern exits of the St. Gond Marshes [map, etc.] and by moving part of its forces on to the plateau north of Sézanne. The offensive will be assumed by these armies on the morning of September 6th" (Spears, p405).

This instruction will reach the French liaison officers at (British) GHQ at 0300hr the following morning, but will not be shown to Sir John French until he wakens at 0700hr [sub-thread continues at 5th September …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1**ASIDE:** Sir John French offers a slightly different translation in his 1919 memoirs [Project Gutenberg full text online].

1914 [Friday 4th September-10th September] The Frontiers Campaign [XVI - Lorraine (The Grand Couronné)]: [Continued from 29th August] This battle is fought in the heights of the Grand Couronné (<=24th August) east of Nancy between Crown Prince Rupprecht's [24th August<==>5th September] Sixth (Bavarian) Army and de Castelnau’s [24th August<==>5th September] Second Army. It is a battle of extreme ferocity to start with, for the following reason ...

"Although the main [Marne] attack was to be delivered by the armies of the left, the armies of the right and centre had important parts to play in Joffre's plan. [...] The Fourth Army was to hold the enemy whilst the Third Army on its right made a drive westward into the flank of the German forces marching to the west of the Argonne. Castelnau's Second Army was to defend its positions at all costs [...] because if he failed to hold the Couronné of Nancy the enemy would find the way open for an advance in rear of the main French line" (Spears, p425).

The Germans attack for five solid days but to no great avail, and the offensive will be called off altogether on 10th September when von Moltke [29th August<==>14th September] resolves that he needs the Bavarians further north. A separate offensive around St. Mihiel [map, etc.] has its own entry [sub-thread continues at 7th September …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 4th-9th September] The German armed merchant cruiser Kronprinz Wilhelm [6th August<==>7th October] captures the freighter SS Indian Prince [no convenient shipography] and spends the next five days transferring fuel and stores from her, whereupon she is sunk with demolition charges. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Saturday 5th September] Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, and Broadcasting [CXVII - The German Navy Cut Off]: [Continued from 2nd August] The U.S. Navy establishes a neutrality-guaranteeing presence within the Tuckerton [<=19th June] and Sayville [<=1912 (11th October)<==>1915 (1st July)] Wireless Stations, enforcing their use for peacetime purposes and doing their best to prevent naval traffic [sub-thread continues at 1915 (6th May) …]. [THREAD = WW1 SIGNALLING AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS]

********** A FAMOUS BRITISH UNTRUTH **********

1914 [Saturday 5th September] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XIV - The Angels of Mons]: [Continued from 2nd September] In diarised material compiled after the war, the British intelligence officer John Charteris [Wikipedia biography] refers to a story (more on which shortly) circulating within the B.E.F. around this time concerning "the Angels of Mons" [sub-thread continues at next entry …]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]
"We hung on his every word. We saw as he evoked [his plan] the immense battlefield over which the corps, drawn by the magnet of his will, were moving like pieces of intricate machinery until they clicked into their appointed places. We saw trains in long processions labouring under the weight of their human freight, great piles of shells mounting up by the side of the ready and silent guns. And all this was taking place behind a veil so thin and tenuous that none could perceive it, but through which no German appeared able to see. [...] Joffre was now foretelling what would happen on the morrow and on the day after and on the day after that, and as a prophet he was heard with absolute faith. We were listening to the story of the victory of the Marne, and we absolutely believed. [...] He spoke of the order he would make the next day after that, and as a prophet he was heard with absolute faith. We were listening to the story of the victory of the Marne, and we absolutely believed. [...] He spoke of the order he was issuing to his troops. The time for retreating was over. Those who could not advance were to die where they stood. No man was to give way even as much as a foot. [...] Then, turning full on Sir John, with an appeal so intense as to be irresistible, clasping both his own hands so as to hurt them, General Joffre said: 'Monsieur le Maréchal, c'est la France qui vous supplie' [= "Field Marshall, France beseeches you"]. His hands fell to his sides wearily. The effort he had made had exhausted him. We all looked at Sir John. He had understood and was under the stress of strong emotion. Tears stood in his eyes, welled over and rolled down his cheeks. He tried to say something in French. For a moment he struggled with his feelings and with the language, then turning to an [aide] he exclaimed: 'Damn it, I can't explain. Tell him that all that men can do our fellows will do'" (op. cit., p414-418).

**ASIDE:** It will later emerge (e.g., Spears, 1930; Dunn, 1938) that there were significant difficulties countermanding orders which had already gone out for the next day's retreat, resulting in many British units spending the first day of the advance well to the rear of their French allies.

The ensuing week-long "Battle of the Marne" is fought out between (both sides from west to east) the French Sixth, Fifth, and Ninth Armies under Maunoury (3rd September<=next entry), (newly appointed) Franchet d'Espéry (3rd September<=6th September),
and Foch [29th August<=>next entry but one], respectively. supported by Sordet’s [<=24th August] Cavalry Corps covering Sixth Army’s left (i.e., northern) flank and by the B.E.F. in the angle between Sixth and Fifth Army, and the German First, Second, and Third Armies under von Kluck [3rd September<=>next entry], von Bülow [29th August<=>next entry but one], and von Haunen [23rd August<=>next entry but one], respectively. Langle de Cary’s [18th August<=>6th September] Fourth Army and Sarrail’s [30th August<=>6th September] Third Army are instructed to pin down Württemberg’s [18th August<=>10th September] Fourth Army and Crown Prince Wilhelm’s [18th August<=>10th September] Fifth Army in their respective sectors, and Gallieni’s [4th September<=>7th September] Army of Paris - with no little daring - has moved forward en masse out of its redoubts to support Sixth Army.

**ASIDE - THE PARIS GARRISON ON THE MARNE (1):** Paris was defended by a roughly circular system of fortifications some 20 miles out from the city centre, including in the north-east the sector Dammartin-en-Goële [map, etc.] to Lagy [maplink at 3rd September]. Taking advantage of the Parisian railway network Sixth Army had been created in situ along this sector, and the Army of Paris simply had to move itself forward out of its forts, depots, and barracks to join them. An officer with 2nd Bo Royal Welch Fusiliers [3rd September<=>10th September] will later recall that his unit’s retreat between 0200hr and 0900hr on 5th September was often held up "by the passage in the opposite direction of motor lorries and buses, and vehicles of all sorts, filled to overflowing with French troops brought up from round Paris" (Dunn, 1938, p48) [sub-thread continues at 7th September (ASIDE (2))].

The strongpoint at Maubeuge, 100 miles north, which has been cut off and under siege for the past 10 days and will not be able to hold out much longer, is allowed to enter surrender negotiations.

**ASIDE - THE FALL OF MAUBEUGE:** It is important to note the fate of Maubeuge at this juncture because the surrender freed up for use elsewhere those elements of the German First and Second Armies which had been detached to conduct the siege.

Within the B.E.F.’s 18-mile sector the units are arranged as follows: On the left Pulteney’s [1st September<=>6th September] III Corps is centred on Rozay-en-Brie [map, etc.], in the centre Smith-Dorrien’s [1st September<=>6th September] II Corps is centred on Touann-en-Brie [map, etc.], and on the right Haig’s [1st September<=>8th September] I Corps is centred on Brie-Comte-Rober [map, etc.]. Allenby’s [1st September<=>8th September] Cavalry Corps is close by on the right ready to support as necessary. Although not scheduled to begin until the following morning the counter-attack actually begins at 1300hr [see next entry]. The most important engagements are individually recorded over the coming pages, and once German reserves start being sucked into the Marne sector, de Castelnau’s [4th September<=>7th September] Second Army will start to be transferred the 200 miles from its concentration around Nancy [maplink at 14th August] to a new concentration north of Paris and east of Beauvais [map, etc.], Picardy, where it will shortly be playing an important role in the Race to the Sea [<=15th September]. Crown Prince Rupprecht’s [4th September<=>7th September] Sixth (Bavarian) Army will mirror this relocation to the northwest a few days later [=>10th September] and will likewise play an important role in said Race [sub-thread continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

************** THE ALLIED COUNTER-ATTACK BEGINS **************
************** THE ALLIED COUNTER-ATTACK BEGINS **************
************** THE ALLIED COUNTER-ATTACK BEGINS **************
************** THE ALLIED COUNTER-ATTACK BEGINS **************
************** THE ALLIED COUNTER-ATTACK BEGINS **************

1914 [Saturday 5th (1300hr)-9th September] The First Marne Campaign [IV - The Battle of the Ourcq]: [Continued from preceding entry] This battle is the first major action within the broader Marne Campaign and is fought between Maunoury’s [preceding entry<=>6th September] Paris-
enhanced Sixth Army and those elements of von Kluck's First Army holding the Ourcq sector. Maunoury is moving into his jumping-off positions in readiness for a drive eastward toward the River Ourcq but is so close to the First Army's advancing IV Reserve Corps under Johann von Gronau that the campaign begins early.

1914 [Sunday 6th September-4th October] The Serbian Campaign [II - The Battle of Drina]:
[Continued from 15th August] This battle is fought for control of the Drina river crossings into southern Serbia between an Austro-Hungarian army under Oskar Potiorek [Wikipedia biography] and a Serbian/Montenegrin army under Stepan Stepanović [Wikipedia biography]. The outcome is a hard-fought Austro-Hungarian victory at the bridgeheads followed by the withdrawal of the Serbs into a chain of hilltop fortifications to the south.

*********) "CALM IN THE ADVANCE"! **********

1914 [Sunday 6th-7th September] The First Marne Campaign [V - The First Two Full Days]:
[Continued from 5th September] During the first two full days of the Marne offensive the Germans suddenly realise the threat to their First Army's western flank and reverse their columns to conduct a Great Retreat of their own ...

ASIDE - ARMIES ON THE MOVE: We have already remarked some time ago as follows ...

ASIDE REPEATED FROM 1626 (BATTLE OF LUTTER AM BAMBERG): "The problem with running away from one battlefield is that unless your enemy expressly lets you go you rarely make it to the next. Your biggest problem is deciding whether to put your fighting troops ahead of your baggage train, or behind it, and both decisions are wrong. If you put your troops ahead of your baggage train then it leaves all your food, ammunition, tents, etc., and all but your lightest cannon, undefended. If you put your troops behind your baggage train then your retreat will be at the speed of the slowest cart and the weakest wagon-wheel. The best solution is to withdraw with as little panic as possible, and with an effective rear-guard to keep your pursuers at a distance. It is also useful to be leaving behind a place worth looting because is likely to distract your pursuers. We shall be studying the relationship between logistics and mobility in WW1 in due course."

More recently we have also already noted that an infantry brigade on the move occupies some three miles of road and moves at about one and a half miles an hour [see the quotation from Murland (2011) at 24th August]. This means that a three-corps army will string out to some 75 miles in length, of which only the first dozen men (out of the 90,000 or so involved) can fight in an advance and the last dozen in a retreat. It is the job of staff officers to prevent such inefficiency, that is to say, to enable an army to move and fight (and eat and sleep, etc.) at the same time by using all available roads and by-ways, phased departures, strong rearguards, spoiling local counter-attacks, etc., etc.. And although most recruits can be turned into effective front-line fighters, the same is not true of staff officers, who fight with their forebrains rather than their instincts, and whose mistakes - when they make them - are far more damaging than enemy action.

Maunoury's Sixth Army now spends 48 hours pushing von Gronau's IV Reserve Corps back to a line from Varreddes to Acy-en-Multien, an advance of around 15 miles.

STUDENT EXERCISE: Using Google Maps find Acy-en-Multien, and then adjust centring and scaling so that Acy is at the top of your screen, Meaux/Varreddes is at the bottom, and Coulombs-en-Valois is off to the right. Now place your left little fingertip on Acy and your left index fingertip on Varreddes. This is where Sixth Army were after two full days of fighting. Now without moving your little finger rotate your wrist 90º counter-clockwise so that your index finger passes Lizy-sur-Ourcq (where the Ourcq flows into the Marne) and points now to Coulombs. This is where Sixth Army will end up after two
To the south of Sixth Army Sir John French (5th September«=>8th September) spends most of the first day reversing the B.E.F.'s columns. As per Instruction No. 6 («=4th September) the B.E.F. then cautiously advances on the second day, meeting no significant resistance, to a line roughly centred on Coulommiers (maplink at 4th September), pivoting themselves as they do so to face north-east rather than north. To their right Franchet d'Espéry's (5th September«=>8th September) Fifth Army spends 6th September advancing toward the highway between Courtacon (maplink at 4th September) and Sézanne (maplink at 29th August), against a controlled withdrawal by von Bülow's (preceding entry but one«=>10th September) rearguard III Corps, commanded by Ewald von Lochwow [Wikipedia biography=8th September]. Beyond Sézanne, the first element of Foch's (5th September«=>8th September) Ninth Army, namely the independent 42e Division commanded by Paul F. Grossetti (Wikipedia biography=21st October), finds itself having to anchor Ninth Army's left flank around La Villeneuve-lès-Charleville (map, etc.), while the main body of that army struggles to hold back a surprise Second and Third Army attack in the Saint-Gond Marshes sector at 0415hr on 8th September. Further east still, beyond Sommesous (maplink at 29th August), Langle de Cary's (5th September«=>8th September) Fourth Army and Sarrail's (5th September«=>8th September) Third Army continue to put pressure on the German Fourth and Fifth Armies between Bar le Duc (map, etc.) and Verdun (maplink at 21st August). Sarrail's troops are frequently outclassed by Kurt von Pritzelwitz's [Wikipedia biography=8th September] VI Corps [sub-thread continues at 8th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1**ASIDE - BANNER QUOTATION:** This description from Spears (1930, p439).

2**ASIDE - THE PARIS GARRISON ON THE MARNE (2):** [Continued from 5th September (ASIDE (1))] Although Gallieni's (5th September«=>1915 (9th December)) Army of Paris had been moving forward since 5th September it is important to remember that Paris was also the rail hub for reinforcements in transit from further afield. The passage of one unit in particular - the 7th Division, being transferred from Fourth Army to Sixth Army - suddenly caught the Press's imagination. This unit arrived in Paris on the evening of 7th September only to find that there were no onward trains available. Gallieni accordingly requisitioned 600 Paris taxicabs, placed five soldiers in each, and convoyed them toward the sound of gunfire. Newsreel coverage "went viral" worldwide [we recommend this YouTube museum videocollage], and a centenary commemorative in the Daily Express (7th September 2014) reported that the bill came to FF70,102 [roughly GBP280,000 in today's money] (although it failed to mention whether this included a tip). For more formal details, see Spears (1930, p546).

3**ASIDE - THE GREAT POKER GAME OF WAR:** It is likely that the German attack in the Saint-Gond sector was merely a spoiling attack intended to throw the Allied advance elsewhere off balance. It is possible that it was timed to tie down Ninth Army while the Sixth (Bavarian) Army attacks in the St. Mihiel sector [see next entry].

1914 [Monday 7th September-13th September] **The Frontiers Campaign [XVII - Lorraine (The St. Mihiel Offensive)]:** [Continued from 4th September] This battle is fought as an adjunct to the ongoing battles of the Marne («=6th September) and Grand Couronné («=4th September) in an attempt by Crown Prince Rupprecht's (5th September«=>10th September) Sixth (Bavarian) Army to break the French line in southern Lorraine between Verdun (maplink at 21st August) and Pont-à-Mousson (map, etc.). The French line is held by a loose line of infantry units strung out across the Woëvre Forest massif up to 20 miles in front of a much harder line of seven Séré de Rivières forts («=1874) dotted along the Côtes de Meuse [the "Meuse Heights": map, etc.). The sector falls between the command jurisdiction of the Verdun Strongpoint to the north and de Castelnau's (5th September«=>17th September) Second Army to the south. The Germans quickly force the defenders back onto their fort line, but have thoughtfully brought with them some of their super-heavy siege artillery so that after
only 24 hours these forts are under heavy bombardment [see, for example, the experiences at Fort de Troyon at http://fortiffere.fr/aultsdemenu/index_fichiers/Page10763.htm]. However the commanders of these forts are told in no uncertain terms to hold pending reinforcement, for if the Germans are allowed to get across the Meuse it will cut the supply lines up to Verdun. The forts do their job, and the strategic situation is saved when on 10th September Rupprecht is instructed to prepare instead for entrainment north, where the need is greater. Nevertheless the Germans have successfully created the "St. Mihiel Salient" and Rupprecht's replacements will finally take the forts later in the month. The salient will then remain in German hands until retaken by the Americans in 1918 =>1918 (12th September)] [sub-thread continues at 10th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Monday 7th-11th September] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XVI - Reporting the Battle of Mons]: [Continued from 5th September] The Press Bureau [31st August<=24th September] permits a detailed account of the Battle of Mons [<=23rd August] to be released. It appears in the London Gazette on 10th September and is then reprinted in the Standard on 11th. We have already covered most of the constituent actions and events. Other coverage also includes the first printed mention of the "Angels of Mons" [<=5th September] in a letter to a provincial newspaper. This latter story will now be further embellished by one of Lord Northcliffe's [27th August<=11th September] staff propagandists, the journalist Arthur Machen [Wikipedia biography]=>29th September, in his story "The Bowmen" =>29th September [sub-thread continues at 11th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

********** HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT BATTLE **********

1914 [Monday 7th-14th September] The Eastern Campaign [III - The First Battle of the Masurian Lakes]: [Continued from 3rd September] This battle is fought between the German Eight Army under von Hindenburg [26th August<=28th September] and the Russian First and Tenth Armies under Paul von Rennenkampf [Wikipedia biography]. The outcome is another against-the-odds catastrophic Russian defeat with heavily disproportionate casualties [sub-thread continues at 1st December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]


1914 [Tuesday 8th September] Following a navigational error RMS Oceanic [25th August=>sinks this day] runs aground on the Isle of Foula [map, etc.] in the Faroes Archipelago. All her crew are rescued. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1 ASIDE: The navigator, one David Blair [<=25th August] (whose personal binoculars might have saved the Titanic had he not been transferred from her just before she sailed) was subsequently court martialed and found guilty of "suffering [his ship] to be stranded".

1914 [Tuesday 8th-9th September] The First Marne Campaign [VI - Days #3 and #4 (Back across the Marne)]: [Continued from 6th September] During the third and fourth days of the Marne offensive the Germans in the west execute a fighting retreat back toward the Marne crossings around Château-Thierry [maplink at 3rd September], but in the east they contrive to mount a spoiling offensive of their own against Foch's [6th September<=10th September] Ninth Army. Maunoury's [6th September<=10th September] Sixth Army makes only slow progress against von Gronau's [6th September<=10th September] IV Reserve Corps east of Meaux [maplink at 4th September] (these latter having now been urgently reinforced), duly executing the 90° left wheel manoeuvre previously described [<=6th September (STUDENT EXERCISE)]. The B.E.F. and Franchet d'Espérey's [6th September<=8th September] Fifth Army...
make more rapid progress from **Coulommiers** [map, etc] to form an arc from **La Ferté-sous-Jouarre** [map, etc] to Château-Thierry (B.E.F.), and then from Château-Thierry to **Charleville** [map, etc] (Fifth Army), where they butt up against the left wing of Ninth Army. By daylight on 9th September **Allenby** [5th September<=>10th October] has a cavalry screen in place north of the Marne and **Hajig**’s [5th September<=>13th September] I Corps is making good use of the crossings between La Ferté and **Nogent-l'Artaud** [map, etc]. Once across the river, however, they find that they are ahead of the general line of advance and so sit tight five miles west of Château-Thierry in the countryside short of **Coupru** [map, etc]. Long after there would have been any propaganda value in inventing the story, Spears (1930) will recall this phase of the advance as follows ...

"... hundreds of little combats were explained by the position of the dead who had taken part in them: here a shallow trench or ditch full of Germans who had been caught by the 75s, there a group of Frenchmen lying in the open where a machine-gun had caught them; then five or six Germans lying in a haystack. And always, in the German trenches, an incredible quantity of empty bottles. [...] The German dead, strange to say, turned absolutely black a few hours after death, so much so that it was difficult to believe they were not negroes. Different theories were advanced to account for this. Some said it was the result of being killed by the French 75s, others that it was the effect of drinking so much wine" (Spears, p444).

**Langle de Cary**’s [6th September<=>10th September] Fourth Army and **Sarrail**’s [6th September<=>10th September] Third Army continue to put pressure on the German Fourth and Fifth Armies between **Vitry-le-François** [map, etc] and **Verdun** [map, etc] at 21st August] [sub-thread continues at 10th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Tuesday 8th September] **The Viceroy’s Telegram**: The Under-Secretary of State for India, **Charles H. Roberts** [Wikipedia biography], reads out before the House of Commons a telegram from the Viceroy detailing how the Indians have generously and enthusiastically been contributing men, money, and material toward the British war effort. The Viceroy’s point is to reassure Parliament that India, as do Canada, South Africa, Australia, and New Zealand, regards Britain’s war as their war too. One wag suggests that a copy of the telegram should be sent to the Kaiser (Hansard, 66:574-578). [THREAD = WW1 ARMS, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Wednesday 9th September] **The Belgian Campaign [VI - The Battle of Antwerp (Von Beseler Takes Over)]**: [Continued from 24th August] **Von Kluck** [5th September<=>10th September] delegates the assault on **Antwerp/Anvers** [maplink at 12th August] to Hans H. **von Beseler** [Wikipedia biography] who, now that the Siege of Maubeuge [<=26th August] is over, now has First Army’s super-heavy siege artillery on its way to him [sub-thread continues at 20th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Thursday 10th-14th September] **Coronel and the Falklands [IV - Dresden Plays Cat-and-Mouse]**: [Continued from 7th September] On 10th September **Cradock** [7th August<=>5th October] sends half his forces - the ageing armoured cruiser **HMS Monmouth** [Wikipedia shipography] to Hans H. von Beseler to Hans H. **von Beseler** [Wikipedia biography] who, now that the Siege of Maubeuge [<=26th August] is over, now has First Army’s super-heavy siege artillery on its way to him [sub-thread continues at 20th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

"There is a strong probability of **Scharnhorst** and **Gneisenau** arriving in the Magellan Straits or on the west coast of South America. [...] Leave sufficient force to deal with **Dresden** and **SMS Karlsruhe** [6th August<=>4th November]. **Concentrate a squadron strong enough to meet Scharnhorst and Gneisenau, making Falkland Islands your coaling base. Canopus** [7th August<=>18th October] is now en route to Abrolhos, **Defence** is joining you from the
The British 6th Division starts to disembark at St. Nazaire, from where it will be taken forward by train to join Pulteney's III Corps. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

The First Marne Campaign [VII - Days #5 through #7 (Back Across the Aisne)]: Following von Bülow's spoiling attack in the Saint-Gond sector the Germans finally decide that the Marne Salient is untenable and begin a full-scale withdrawal back to hastily prepared positions on the heights north of the Aisne. For example, an officer of the 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers, advancing from La Ferté-sous-Jouarre, will later recall as follows ...

"Signs multiplied that the Germans were retreating. Wagons, a gun, pieces of equipment, lay about. [...] And the cavalry evidently found that they could ride better without their lances. For three miles beyond [La Corbière, close to La Ferté] bottles were practically touching on both sides of the road ..." (Dunn, 1938, p59).

Each Allied Army now presses its opposite number's rearguard units northward, as follows ...

Maunoury's Sixth Army follows von Kluck's First Army toward Soissons on 12th September and then follows von Bülow's Second Army toward Neufchâtel-sur-Aisne, 10 miles north of Reims.

Franchet d'Espèrey's Fifth Army retakes Reims on 12th September and then follows von Bülow's Second Army toward Neufchâtel-sur-Aisne.

Foch's Ninth Army retakes Châlons-sue-Marne on 12th September and then follows von Hausen's Third Army toward a line running southeast from Neufchâtel to Saint-Hilaire-le-Grand.

Langle de Cary's Fourth Army follows Württemberg's Fourth Army toward a line running east from Saint-Hilaire-le-Grand to Vienne-le-Château.


These movements are noteworthy in the present context because from the Oise to Switzerland they will remain the line of the Western Front for the remainder of the war - the line of the front north of the Oise is about to be decided in the Race for the Sea. [sub-thread continues at 13th September as First Aisne Campaign ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

ASIDE: Châlons-sur-Marne was formally renamed Châlons-en-Champagne in 1998.

The Frontiers Campaign [XVIII - Lorraine (The Bavarians March Northward)]: At 0900hr Crown Prince Rupprecht receives orders to scale down the St. Mihiel Offensive with immediate effect, and to prepare his Sixth (Bavarian) Army instead for
transfer northward. The St. Mihiel attack proceeds with the reduction and occupation of the forts on the Meuse Heights by V Corps under Hermann von Strantz, detached for the purpose from Fifth Army opposite Verdun. Von Heeringen's Seventh Army follows the Bavarians northward [sub-thread continues at 13th September First Aisne Campaign and 15th September Race to the Sea …].

[THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Thursday 10th September] The British artist Paul Nash enlists in the 28th (County of London) Battalion [The Artists' Rifles] [1908 (1st April) => 1915 (21st October)]. [THREAD = WW1 INDIVIDUAL HISTORIES]

********** MORE ADVICE ON HOW TO DEAL WITH COWARDS **********

1914 [Friday 11th September] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XVII - The Problem of "Shirkers" Exposed]: [Continued from 7th September] Describing himself as "Capt. Late RFA Company's Forces" and giving the address "St. Helier, Jersey", a certain K. Lyons Montgomery has a letter published in Lord Northcliffe's The Standard in which he puts forward the following interesting proposal …

"Sir, Let the women of the districts, towns, and villages of Great Britain form committees and sub-committees who will go round and put down the names of all single men eligible for soldiering, and opposite each name the reason he gives for not enlisting. Copies of these lists should be put up in a prominent place, such as market house, police court, and post office. Also all eligible men who hold back should be boycotted by all women in the town or village where or near where they live. A good heading on the notice would be: 'Our Village Cowards'."

The issue of what to do with "shirkers" - men who for whatever reason, including conscientious, avoid enlisting - is about to become increasingly bitter over the coming months [sub-thread continues at 15th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 RECRUITMENT TECHNIQUES]

1 ASIDE: The Lyons-Montgomery family stems in the mid-18th Century from the minor British land-owning and/or military nobility of British Ireland.

1914 [Friday 11th-14th September] Action in the Pacific [VIII - The Rabaul Landings and the Battle of Bita Paka]: [Continued from 2nd September] At 0330hr 11th September the Australian Naval and Military Expeditionary Force and its Royal Australian Navy escort start to offload shore parties to seize control of Rabaul and to destroy the German wireless station at Bita Paka. The German defence is led by Carl von Klewitz. Australian casualties are six killed and four wounded (for details of this operation we recommend Perryman (2014 online)). The escort ships had been half expecting to find the German Asia Squadron under von Spee in Rabaul Harbour, but it has already left to seek its fortune off the west coast of South America [to follow their fortunes switch to the Coronel and the Falklands sub-thread]. One 20-man German party under Hermann P. Detzner is patrolling the interior at the time of the landing and, rather than surrender, engages in a low-grade guerrilla campaign for the rest of the war [sub-thread continues at 31st October …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** "KITCHENER'S ARMY" - THE SECOND 100,000 **********

1914 [Friday 11th September] Irish Home Rule [XXVIII - The 16th (Irish) Division]: [Continued from 3rd September] The British War Office approves the establishment of a K2 division in Ireland to bring to the field the first tranche of the service battalions presently being assembled from Irish recruiting stations. Click here to see the detailed composition of
ASIDE: The descriptor "K2" indicates the six divisions - one Scottish, one Irish, and four English - authorised on 11th September 1914 to cope with the second wave of New Army volunteers - full details at http://www.1914-1918.net/kitcheners.htm.

********** "KITCHENER'S ARMY" - THE THIRD 100,000 **********

1914 [Sunday 13th September] The British War Office approves the establishment of six K3 divisions to bring to the field the third tranche of the service battalions presently being assembled. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Sunday 13th-28th September] The First Aisne Campaign: [A.k.a. the First Battle of the Aisne] This two-week battle is fought between the Allied left and the German right wings as they stood on the last day of the Battle of the Marne [<=10th September]. Specifically the German First Army has decided to make a stand north of the Aisne, along a 30-mile line from Tracy-le-Mont [map, etc.] to the eastern end of the Chemin des Dames heights [Wikipedia factsheet] at Cerny-en-Laonnois [map, etc.]. These now face the French Sixth Army attempting to cross the Aisne between Compiègne [maplink at 1st September] and Soissons [maplink at 1st September], and the B.E.F. attempting to do likewise between Soissons and Villers-en-Prayères [map, etc.]. The right wing of the German Second Army has ended up on a 15-mile front between the Aisne at Condé-sur-Suippe [map, etc.] and the heathland north-east of Reims [maplink at 10th September], where it faces Fifth Army, fresh from its reoccupation of Reims. Fifth Army also has XVIII Corps under de Maud'huy [14th August<=29th September] north of the Aisne around Craonne [map, etc.]. These had been heading for the 12-mile gap between First Army and Second Army, but now find that gap blocked in the nick of time by the most advanced unit of von Heeringen's newly transferred Seventh Army, namely VII Reserve Corps under Hans von Zwehl [Wikipedia biography]. Within the B.E.F.'s sector Haig's [8th September=>5th October] I Corps is developing a bridgehead at Villers, whilst Smith-Dorrien's [5th September=>8th October] II Corps and Pulteney's [10th September=>10th October] III Corps are doing likewise around Vailly-sur-Aisne [map, etc.] and Venizel [map, etc.], respectively. The sheer weight of Allied numbers quickly allows the riverline to be secured ...

ASIDE: In fact [Sir] Aylmer G. Hunter-Weston's [Wikipedia biography] 11th Brigade (part of III Corps' 4th Division) had - thanks to a bold 30-mile forced march - secured a bridgehead at Venizel overnight and now follows that success up on 13th September with a dawn attack up onto the plateau to the north.

... however generally speaking the Aisne Heights are more easily defended and the battle soon degenerates into trench warfare, thus ...

"No one foresaw what the war was going to develop into, its horror, its duration, its dreariness. No one foresaw trench warfare, and it occurred to none that the day of the mighty manoeuvres of armies in which cavalry, artillery, and infantry combined in grandiose operations was over for ever. Looking back, I am deeply thankful that none of those who gazed across the Aisne on September 14th had the faintest glimmering of what was awaiting them. [...] There was nothing to show them that the most dramatic period of the war was over, and that between them and the victory they believed awaited them across the river, stretched four weary years of stalemate on the western front" (Spears, p469).
For his part, Sir John French [10th September=>5th October] graciously places some of the blame for the Marne offensive fizzling out in this way on the effectiveness of German cavalry, thus ...

"For years the German cavalry have been trained in rearguard action such as the work they were now doing. They carry a large quantity of machine guns, which they are trained to handle very efficiently. To each brigade of cavalry there is attached a regiment of jaeger, picked riflemen, chosen for their skill in shooting and in taking advantage of ground. These troops are specially valuable for the defence of river lines and positions which are intended to cause delay to an advancing enemy" (French, 1919 [full text online], Chapter VI).

As for the B.E.F.'s three Welsh battalions (in order of ancestral precedence), (1) the 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [10th September=>12th October] spends the fortnight in reserve south of the Aisne (Dunn, 1938), whilst (2) the 1st Bn South Wales Borderers [for an extract from the 1/SWB War Diary for this period [9th August=>25th September] click here] and (3) the 2nd Bn Welch Regiment [9th August=>25th September] both take part on 14th September in a major I Corps attack up onto the heights north of Villers-en-Prayères [sub-thread continues at 15th September as Race to the Sea ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** FAMOUS LAST WORDS **********

ASIDE: The 14th September attack sees 2/Welch awarded its (and Wales') first Victoria Cross of the war. The citation event is the battalion's assault on the "Beaulne Spur" [map, etc.] during which one Lance Corporal William C. Fuller [Wikipedia biography] selflessly risks his own life recovering Captain Mark Haggard [biography at http://www.powell76.talktalk.net/CaptMarkHaggard.htm=dies of wounds 15th September] to safety from where he had fallen wounded. Haggard, as it happens, will turn out to be just as famous for his attempts to rally the attackers as Fuller will be for bringing him in, for one of his phrases - “Stick it, the Welch!” - is destined to become part of 2/Welch mythology.

********** VON MOLTKE SACKED, CHEMISTS SOUGHT **********

1914 [Monday 14th September] Having reportedly taken to his bed 48 hours previously in a state of mental collapse, Von Moltke [29th August=>14th November] is replaced as Chief of the General Staff of the German Army by Erich von Falkenhayn [Wikipedia biography] next entry]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

ASIDE: Spears is very clear as to von Moltke's responsibility for the German defeat ...

"... no attempt to sum up the considerations affecting the Marne would be complete without reference to their consistent weakening of their right wing. Two corps, some 80,000 men, were immobilised at Antwerp [...]. Two more corps were withdrawn to face the Russian threat against East Prussia, but did not get there until after the Battle of Tannenberg. Had they remained in the west, their intervention might have been decisive, as it was they were entirely wasted. Yet another corps was besieging Maubeuge. All these troops belonged to the right wing, which was further weakened in a greater degree than any other German forces by having to guard longer lines of communication, which moreover were on the exposed flank" (Spears, 1930, p434).

1914 [Monday 14th September] Coronel and the Falklands [V - Von Spee Still Moving Eastward]: [Continued from 10th September] Von Spee [11th September=>5th October] Asia Squadron re-coals at Samoa. Around the same time the Admiralty recognises the "strong probability" that von Spee's absence from China Station waters indicates that he is making a break for the South Atlantic via Chile and Cape Horn. The Royal Navy
therefore starts to accumulate assets in the South Atlantic to intercept him [sub-thread continues at 5th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Monday 14th September] Chemical Warfare [I - Building the Team]: Already well-briefed by Walther Rathenau [9th August<=>assassinated 1922 (24th June)] as to the parlous state of German raw material supply von Falkenhayn [preceding entry<=>next entry] is eager to explore the battlefield potential of chemical weapons, to which end he recruits both the artillery expert Max Bauer [16th August<=>1st October], fresh from his triumphant destruction of the Belgian forts [<=16th August], and the internationally renowned chemist Fritz Haber [<=1913 (9th September)], “fresh from his invention of “gunpowder from air” [sub-thread continues at 1st October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL WARFARE]

1914 [Tuesday 15th September] The Race to the Sea [I - Von Falkenhayn Makes Plans]: Confident that his new defensive line on the Aisne Heights is going to hold, von Falkenhayn's next priority is to deal with his unanchored, and therefore highly unstable, northern flank. He therefore orders Crown Prince Rupprecht's [10th September<=>18th September] Sixth (Bavarian) Army (presently in transit from Lorraine, remember [<=10th September]) to start reassembling around Maubeuge [maplink at 20th August], from where he can simultaneously threaten (a) to get in behind the Allied left flank north of Compiègne [maplink at 1st September], and (b) to mount a quick drive for the Channel coast. Given that there is only d'Amade's [29th August<=>1915 (11th April)] territorial screen between Compiègne and the Channel Ports, von Falkenhayn's first objectives will be the towns of Noyon [maplink at 29th August] and Roye [map, etc.], and, further north still, Amiens [maplink at 29th August] [sub-thread continues at 17th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]


ASIDE: Mason's 1902 novel "The Four Feathers" is nowadays seen as a high camp version of the English British in their Empire, extolling as it does the Boys' Own Magazine [=1879] virtues of pluck, personal honour, and devotion to duty. It was first filmed in 1915 (J. Searle Dawley), then again in 1921, (starring Fay Wray) 1929, 1939 (Alexander Korda), 1955, 1978, and (starring Heath Ledger) 2002. Several of these versions are available in full length on YouTube for those with time on their hands, but the 1939 trailer [click here] tells you all you really need to know in only two minutes.

... the scholar G. Gilbert Murray [Wikipedia biography] (of whom more immediately below), the dramatist Alfred Sutro [Wikipedia biography], and the novelists Mary A. Ward [Wikipedia biography] and Margaret L. Woods [Wikipedia biography]. The thrust of the manifesto is to have the British intelligentsia declare themselves "on side", thereby helping to validate the Allied cause in the eyes of those who are actually going to be doing the fighting. The stand taken by the Irish poet William B. Yeats [<=2nd September] when approached by
the aforementioned Gilbert Murray illustrates that not all the Empire's thinkers were so uncritical. Here is an extract from his letter declining the opportunity to think as he was told...

"Dear Murray, No. I am sorry, but No. I long for the defeat of the Germans but your manifesto reads like an extract from the newspapers, and newspapers are liars. What have we novelists, poets, whatever we are, to do with them? First: I don't know whether England or Germany brought on this war, and you don't. [...] That knowledge will be kept by secret diplomacy for a good many years to come. Second: I cannot see who this document is going to influence. It has every sign of its origin 'drawn up to include as many people as possible'...

(as reproduced in Milne, 2014 online).

Yeats’ letter also demonstrates how a process akin to the modern phenomenon of "neck nominating" might well have been used in developing the required social network (Oxford dons clearly responded magnificently) [sub-thread continues at 21st September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [??th September] WW1 Codebreaking [II - Ewing Gets His Ears]: [Continued from ??th August] Sir James A. Ewing [??th August<=>14th October] is approached by the barrister-radio buff Edward Russell Clarke [Grace's Guide biography] and the wireless engineer Richard John Bayntun Hippisley [<=1908]. Both men have been using amateur wireless equipment to eavesdrop on German naval signals from across the North Sea. Ewing is so impressed by the quality of their reporting that he duly appoints them "VIs" [= voluntary interceptors] and deploys them to Hunstanton¹, Norfolk, in order to set up both a listening post and a direction finding station² there. Ewing also draws on the experience of the intelligence office/amateur magician Leslie Harrison Lambert³ [Wikipedia biography]. At much the same time comparable resources are being assembled within Section M11b at the War Office, where [Sir]²⁹¹⁷ George Macdonogh [Wikipedia biography] leads the army's cryptanalysis and intelligence services. Other aspects of naval intelligence are run from Room 37 by F. Leverton Harris [Wikipedia biography] and from Room 61 by Douglas E. R. Brownrigg [no convenient war years biography] [sub-thread continues at 14th October ...], [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

¹ASIDE: At the beginning of the war the Royal Navy have only one listening post, hidden away at the (then-)remote Boldon House, Stockton-on-Tees, County Durham. Both Stockton and Hunstanton face the German ports of Wilhelmshaven, Bremerhaven, and Cuxhaven (not to mention their wireless transmitting station at Norddeich [map, etc.]) across some 300 miles of the North Sea.

²ASIDE: If you are interested in WHERE AN ENEMY IS then you need at least two direction finding stations, both equipped with directionally sensitive aerials to record the compass bearing of the incoming transmission. These independent observations can then be "triangulated" [Wikipedia factsheet] onto a chart and where the bearings intersect is where the enemy is. If, on the other hand, you are interested in WHAT AN ENEMY IS SAYING then you need only one listening station, but also a good ear for Morse Code and access to rapid cryptanalysis facilities. It will subsequently become standard practice to refer to listening stations as "Y-Stations" and direction finding stations as "Z-Stations".

³ASIDE: After the war Lambert earned a living under the pseudonym "A. J. Alan" reading short stories on the BBC. He returned to cryptanalysis in 1939 in Hut 3, Bletchley Park.

********** LONDON WELSH BATTALION PROPOSED **********

1914 [Wednesday 16th September] Possibly/probably at the behest of his friend Lloyd George [1911 (1st July)<=>19th September] the London-based Welsh romantic nationalist and Freemason Sir Evan Vincent Evans [no convenient biography], one of the leading lights in the Honourable Society of Cymmrodorion [Wikipedia factsheet] since joining it in 1881, chairs a recruitment meeting for a new service battalion of Londoners of Welsh extraction. The end result
(once the paperwork has been completed [=>29th October]) is the formation of the 15th Bn (London Welsh) Royal Welch Fusiliers [=>29th October], of which much more in due course. [THREAD = WW1 ARMS, TRADITIONS AND TACTICS] [THREAD = WW1 ROMANTIC NATIONALISM]

********** THE NOYON SALIENT IS FORMED **********

1914 [Thursday 17th-18th September] The Race to the Sea [II - The Battle of Noyon]: [Continued from 15th September] Faced with difficulties breaking through the entrenched German armies on the Aisne [<=13th September] Joffre [5th September<=>22nd September] attempts to outflank them on the left, and thus exploit the 30-mile gap between the Somme at Péronne [map, etc.] and the Oise at Compiègne [maplink at 1st September]. The immediate objective is therefore Noyon [maplink at 29th August], some 13 miles north-east of Compiègne. Joffre assigns this attack to (from the west) de Castelnau's [7th September<=>22nd September] Second Army, freshly transferred from the Lorraine front, and (from the south) Maunoury's [<=10th September] Sixth Army. The Germans respond by simply extending their Aisne trench-line - and its attendant stalemate - northward. It is this deviation to the north which will eventually give the northern extent of the Western Front its characteristic L-shape [check it out] [sub-thread continues at 18th September …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 18th September] The Race to the Sea [III - The Bavarians Reach Maubeuge]: [Continued from 17th September] Destined to play a major part in von Falkenhayn’s [15th September<=>20th September] attempt to prevent his northern flank being turned, Crown Prince Rupprecht’s [15th September<=>22nd September] Sixth (Bavarian) Army starts to assemble at and around Maubeuge [maplink at 20th August] [sub-thread continues at 22nd September …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 18th September] Irish Home Rule [XXIX = Royal Assent]: [Continued from 11th September] In accordance with the strategy set at the outbreak of war [<=30th July] both the Irish Home Rule Bill and the associated Home Rule Suspension Bill simultaneously receive the Royal Assent, thereby leaving Home Rule on hold for the duration of the war and not even beginning to address the issue of partition [sub-thread continues at ??th October …]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** A WELSH ARMY IS PROMISED **********

1914 [Saturday 19th September] 38th (Welsh) Division at War [I - The Promise]: [New sub-thread] Even though large numbers of Welshmen are already serving in non-Welsh regiments, the Chancellor of the Exchequer Lloyd George [16th September<=>22nd September] famously proclaims in a speech at Queen's Hall, Marylebone, that he wishes to see a Welsh Army in the field [full speech online] [sub-thread continues at 1915 (29th November)]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMS, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]


1914 [Sunday 20th September] The Belgian Campaign [VII - The Battle of Antwerp (The Dunkirk Landings)]: [Continued from 9th September] In the early hours the 700-strong Royal Marine Brigade under Sir George Aston [no convenient biography=>25th September] lands at Dunkirk [maplink at 24th August] to help secure a retreat corridor to the south-west, in case the defenders of Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] should be forced to abandon their National Redoubt [sub-thread continues at 25th September …]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]
1914 [Sunday 20th September] **The East African Campaign [III - The Battle of Zanzibar]:**

[Continued from 15th August] The German cruiser SMS Königsberg [5th August<=1915 (11th July)] surprises HMS Pegasus [<=8th August] undergoing running repairs at Zanzibar and promptly sinks her at her moorings [sub-thread continues at 2nd November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

************ MOURNING REQUISITIONED AS PROPAGANDA ************
************ MOURNING REQUISITIONED AS PROPAGANDA ************
************ MOURNING REQUISITIONED AS PROPAGANDA ************

1914 [Monday 21st September] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XIX - Another Non-Combatant Enters the Fray]:** [Continued from 15th September] With only six weeks of (highly censored) newspaper reports and obituaries to go on, the 45-year-old poet R. Laurence Binyon [<=15th September] has already learned enough about war to compose "For the Fallen", including the following famous verse ...

"They shall not grow old, as we that are left grow old.  
Age shall not weary them, nor the years condemn.  
At the going down of the sun and in the morning  
We will remember them."

Concerned that the nobility of his deeds should match that of his words he signs up the following year to help treat the wounded in France [sub-thread continues at 22nd September ...]. [THREAD = THE SCIENCE OF SOLEMN REMEMBRANCE]

1914 [Tuesday 22nd September] **The Belgian Campaign [VIII - The Battle of Antwerp (Special Ops)]:** [Continued from 9th September] In an attempt to take some pressure off the defenders of Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] the Belgians conduct a series of guerrilla attacks against key railway assets in the German rear. The lack of a well-defined front south of the siege-lines also allows the experimental armoured car squadron operated by the RNAS's [= Royal Naval Air Service] Charles R. Samson [1912 (9th May)<=1915 (19th March)] to be used to good effect as petrol-driven cavalry [sub-thread continues at 25th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Tuesday 22nd September] **The Race to the Sea [V - The Battle of Picardy]:** [Continued from 18th September] This four-day battle is Joffre's [17th September<=29th September] Second attempt to exploit the gap between the Somme at Péronne [maplink at 17th September] and the Oise at Compiègne [maplink at 1st September]. With Noyon [<=17th September] already occupied by the Germans the next French objective is Roye [maplink at 15th September], some 20 miles north of Compiègne. Again it falls to de Castelnau [17th September<=25th September] Second Army to attempt the breakthrough, and again the Germans simply extend their trench-line northward from Noyon to protect Roye as well [sub-thread continues at 25th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Tuesday 22nd September] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XX - Wales Follows the Piper]:** [Continued from 21st September] Following Lloyd George's [19th September<=5th October] recent call to arms [<=19th September], today's offering by the Western Mail editorial cartoonist Joseph M. Staniforth [1910 (4th November)<=5th October] is entitled "The Pied Piper of Criccieth" [see it now] and depicts the industrial workers of Wales happily trooping off behind Lloyd George the Pied Piper on his great adventure [sub-thread continues at 24th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CONTEMPORARY EDITORIAL COMMENT]

**ASIDE - THE STANIFORTH COLLECTION:** Staniforth produced over 1300 daily cartoons for the Western Mail and News of the World during WW1, including the linked image above. The full set is available on Cardiff University's "Cartooning the First World
War” website [take me there], where they offer priceless insights into the issues of the day. The work of the War Propaganda Bureau [2nd September=>15th December] in meticulously steering public opinion is often plainly to be seen.


1914 [Thursday 24th September] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXI - Reporting Rules Restated]: [Continued from 22nd September] The Press Bureau [7th September=>28th September] issues a notice setting down guidelines for reporting military operations. The guiding principle is that nothing should be published which describes "any operation of war which has taken place during the preceding five days, as the result of observations made within twenty miles of the front" [sub-thread continues at 28th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CENSORSHIP]

1914 [Friday 25th-28th September] The Belgian Campaign [IX - The Battle of Antwerp (The Battle of Buggenhout)]: [Continued from 22nd September] This four-day battle is fought between the Belgian Field Army at Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] [commanders listed at 24th August (Battle of Malines)] and elements of Württemberg’s [10th September=>10th October] Fourth Army. Fourth Army, reinforced by four infantry corps freed up by the surrender at Maubeuge [=5th September], has recently been transferred from the Ardennes front and now sits at the far right of the German line, tasked with taking Antwerp and securing Belgium’s North Sea coastline down to the Yser Estuary. The attack is timed as a diversionary operation to coincide with the Battle of Albert [see next entry] and will be called off on 29th September as the German siege stranglehold on Antwerp is progressively tightened. Further south, meanwhile, part of Aston’s [20th September=>4th October] Royal Marine Brigade is sent forward on the night of 28th-29th September to help out at Rijsel/Lille [sub-thread continues at 28th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** THE 1916 SOMME FRONT TAKES SHAPE **********
********** THE 1916 SOMME FRONT TAKES SHAPE **********
********** THE 1916 SOMME FRONT TAKES SHAPE **********

1914 [Friday 25th-28th September] The Race to the Sea [VI - The Battle of Albert]: [Continued from 22nd September] Following the Battle of Picardy [=22nd September] this five-day battle is the third attempt to exploit the still-unstable northern end of the Western Front, this time on the Somme itself. It is fought between de Castelnau’s [22nd September=>1916 (21st February)] Second Army and Crown Prince Rupprecht’s [22nd September=>1st October] newly arrived Sixth (Bavarian) Army. With Roye [maplink at 15th September] already secured the Germans are now concentrating around Péronne [maplink at 17th September], where von Falkenhayn [20th September=>6th October] has available two newly transferred infantry corps who duly force the French back in the direction of Albert [map, etc.], thereby threatening not just the cathedral city of Amiens [maplink at 29th August] but also a breakthrough out along the Somme Estuary to the coast at Abbeville [map, etc.]. De Castelnau responds by committing his own reserves and by 28th September the German advance will have been held on a 12-mile-long front from the Ancre River at Thiepval [map, etc.] via Fricourt [map, etc.] to the Somme River at Maricourt [map, etc.]. We shall be hearing much more of these places during the Somme Offensive of 1916 [=1916 (1st July)]. As for the diversionary operations already mentioned [=20th September] Crown Prince Wilhelm’s [10th September=>17th December] Fifth Army finally captures Fort Camp des Romaines [full story at http://lesaillantdesaintmihiel. fr/pages/campd1.htm] to complete the St. Mihiel Salient, and both 1st Bn South Wales Borderers [13th September=>21st October] and 2nd Bn Welch Regiment [13th September=>21st October] have to endure heavy counter-attacks on the Aisne Heights
1914 [Monday 28th September-16th October] **The Eastern Campaign [IV - The Battle of the Vistula (The Initial Successes)]:** [Continued from 7th September] This battle is fought in Poland under the strategic direction of **von Hindenburg** [7th September=>11th November] between the German Ninth Army under **August von Mackenson** [Wikipedia biography]=>17th October, supported by the Austro-Hungarian 1st Army under **Viktor Dankl von Krasnik** [Wikipedia biography], and the Russian 2nd, 4th, 5th, and 9th Armies under the overall command of **Nikolai Ruzsky** [Wikipedia biography]=>17th October. The Germans are mounting a major offensive to threaten Warsaw in order to divert Russian resources from their successful operations against the Austro-Hungarians in Silesia [<=3rd September]. The initial German advance goes well, and by 9th October is only 12 miles away from Warsaw [sub-thread continues at 17th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Monday 28th September] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXII - Smith Steps Aside]:** [Continued from 24th September] The Solicitor-General **Stanley O. Buckmaster** [1st Viscount Buckmaster] takes over the Directorship of the Press Bureau from **Frederick E. Smith** [31st August=>3rd October] on 24th September=>3rd October [sub-thread continues at 29th September ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CENSORSHIP]

1914 [Monday 28th September-10th October] **The Belgian Campaign [X - The Battle of Antwerp (The Final Assault Begins)]:** [Continued from 25th September] This two-week siege is fought out between **von Beseler's** Army of Antwerp and the Belgian garrison in and around Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] under **Victor Deguise** [Wikipedia biography]. The assault begins at 1600hr on 1st October, successfully taking two of the outer ring of forts overnight, and others the following day. As a result the Belgian Supreme Council convenes at 1100hr on 2nd October and after much analysis decides in principle that the city will have to be abandoned and the defenders - the 65,000 men of the Field Army plus the 80,000 garrison troops of the National Redoubt - withdrawn down the coastal corridor to relative safety south of the Yser Estuary, starting on 3rd October. This decision is then telegraphed to London at 2200hr on 2nd October, whereupon **Kitchener** [31st August=>27th October] calls an emergency meeting which results in **Winston Churchill** being sent to Antwerp to discuss options with **King Albert** [24th August=>4th October] in person. This meeting takes place the following evening (3rd October) and the key points of the resulting withdrawal plan are (a) that Antwerp should be actively defended for a further 10 days, in return for which (b) the British government will provide such military assistance as can be spared (Edmonds, 1925) [sub-thread continues at 4th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Tuesday 29th September] **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXIII - Machen Makes it Up]:** [Continued from 28th September] The Evening News journalist **Arthur Machen** publishes an article entitled "The Bowmen" [full text online at http://www.arthurmachen.org.uk/machstory.html] in which he describes the intervention of a heavenly host at the Battle of Mons [<=23rd August (ASIDE)]. As with all effective propaganda this is exactly what the British public want to hear, and the more he subsequently admits he made it all up the more the public believe it [sub-thread continues at 5th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Tuesday 29th September] **The Race to the Sea [VII - New Units Created]:** [Continued from 25th September] **Joffre** [22nd September=>5th October] creates a new, Tenth, Army by consolidating reserves in the region of **Arras** [map, etc.] and appoints the hero of the Aisne crossing...
ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS (the ancestral 23rd Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is now back in Britain [<=3rd September] and awaiting imminent deployment to France as part of 7th Division [=6th October]. 2nd Bn [38th (from 29th November 1915)] is still in France as part of the independent 19th Infantry Brigade, and will soon be incorporated into 6th Division [10th September<=12th October]. 3rd (Reserve) Bn remains active at Wrexham and Pembroke Dock. In addition to the four 1st Bn territorial battalions mobilised in August, the 2nd Bn has started to mobilise its own four territorial battalions, namely 2/4th [(Territorial)] (Denbighshire) Bn at Wrexham, 2/5th [(Territorial)] (Flintshire) Bn at Flint, 2/6th [(Territorial)] (Caernarvonshire and Anglesey) Bn at Caernarfon, and 2/7th [(Territorial)] (Merioneth and Montgomery) Bn at Newtown. The second of the regiment's "New Army" "service battalions", the 9th [(Service)] Bn¹, is also assembling in the tented towns on Salisbury Plain.

SOUTH WALES BORDERERS (the ancestral 24th Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is still in France with the B.E.F.'s I Corps as part of the 1st Division's 3rd Infantry Brigade. 2nd Bn is now actively supporting the Japanese siege at Tsingtao [=31st October]. 3rd (Reserve) Bn remains active at Pembroke Dock. In addition to the territorial battalion mobilised in August the 1st Bn has started to mobilise 1/2nd [(Territorial)] (Breconnockshire) Bn at Brecon. Four further service battalions are also being established at Brecon, namely 5th [(Service)] (Pioneer) Bn, 6th [(Service)] (Pioneer) Bn, 7th [(Service)] Bn, and 8th [(Service)] Bn.

THE WELCH REGIMENT (the ancestral 41st and 69th Regiments of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is still in India. 2nd Bn is still in France with I Corps as part of the 1st Division's 3rd Infantry Brigade.

THE (TERRITORIAL) WELSH ARMY
1 - INFANTRY
The following territorial infantry regiments in Wales (sometimes also in the border counties of England) are mobilising in their respective garrison town(s) ...

¹ASIDE: For a reminder of Llanelli's contribution to this particular battalion see http://www.llanellich.org.uk/Files/world-war-one-soldiers.html.
THE CHESHIRE REGIMENT

The 2nd Bn Cheshire Regiment has mobilised the first two of its four affiliated territorial battalions, namely 2/4th Bn at Birkenhead and 2/6th Bn at Stockport.

**ASIDE - NUMBERING OF TERRITORIAL BATTALIONS IN REGULAR ARMY REGIMENTS:** The British WW1 Territorial Force typically used so-called "fractional nomenclature", that is to say, battalions were numbered "a/b". For the territorial battalions affiliated to regular army regiments the format "a/bth [(Territorial)] (optional name) Bn" was used, where a was the number of the affiliated regular battalion (thus always 1 or 2), and b was the number of the new battalion within the regiment, counting upwards from 4 (because 1 through 3 were already in use). We saw this format used, for example, in the 2/4th [(Territorial)] (Denbighshire) Bn earlier in this entry.

THE HEREFORDSHIRE REGIMENT

The (all-territorial) Herefordshire Regiment has mobilised its 2/1st Bn at Hereford.

**ASIDE - NUMBERING OF TERRITORIAL BATTALIONS IN ALL- TERRITORIAL ARMY REGIMENTS:** Where the regiment in question was itself a territorial-only regiment then there were, of course, no regular battalions to affiliate to. These battalions therefore followed the format "a/bth [(Territorial)] (optional name) Bn", where a was a low number (typically a 1 or a 2) recording the sequence of battalions raised at a particular recruiting town, and b was the number of the new battalion within the regiment, counting upwards from 1 (because no numbers were already in use). We see this format used, for example, in the battalions of the Monmouthshire Regiment below.

THE MONMOUTHSHIRE REGIMENT

The Monmouthshire Regiment has mobilised three "2-series"[^1] battalions, one each for the three 1-series units mobilised in August. These are 2/1st (Rifle) Bn at Stow Hill, Newport, 2/2nd Bn at Osborne Road, Pontypool, and 2/3rd Bn at Abergavenny.

[^1]: This means that the original 1st, 2nd, and 3rd battalions now need to be renumbered 1/1st, 1/2nd, and 1/3rd.

Those units already assigned to 53rd (Welsh) Division [<=1st September] are busily training at Northampton (Ward, 1927).

II - MOUNTED

All four Welsh territorial mounted units are now putting together their 2-series units, namely the 2/1st Bn Montgomeryshire Yeomanry at Welshpool, the 2/1st Bn Pembroke Yeomanry at Tenby, the 2/1st Bn Denbighshire Hussars at Wrexham, and the 2/1st Bn Glamorgan Yeomanry at Bridgend. The 1-series units remain encamped at Thetford, Norfolk. The Welsh Horse Yeomanry is presently training in the countryside north of Cardiff, but their founding father (and, according to many, Colonel by right), Arthur O. Vaughan [<=23rd September] has been totally side-lined by the (more politically and socially acceptable) Lord Kensington. A 2/1st Welsh Horse Yeomanry is being raised at Newtown.

THE (REGULAR) "WELSH ARMY"

Lloyd George's vision of a regular "Welsh Army" has just been formally announced [<=19th September] and will in due course incorporate a number of the service battalions mentioned above. The Welsh Guards have still not yet been created [=>1915 (26th February)].

****************** END OF MONTHLY UPDATE, SEPTEMBER 1914 ******************

****************** END OF MONTHLY UPDATE, SEPTEMBER 1914 ******************
1914 [Thursday 1st October] The French intelligence officer François Cartier [no convenient biography] briefs the individual French field armies on how to read the German Army's "ÜBCHI" tactical wireless encryption system [Wikipedia factsheet]. He also sets out procedures for systematic "traffic analysis", that is to say, the recording and subsequent critical scrutiny of a nation's wireless communication traffic looking for odd trends and patterns even when the precise content defies cryptanalysis. The key parameters are quantity, signal strength, and (if possible) direction. [The modern GCHQ website calls this process "contextualising the scraps" - Ed.] [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Thursday 1st October] Chemical Warfare [II - Early Trials]: [Continued from 14th September] Based at a rural weapons proving ground outside Cologne Max Bauer [<=14th September] liaises with industrial and university experts including the University of Berlin's physicist Walther H. Nernst [Wikipedia biography] and Friedrich Bayer and Company's [<=5th August] CEO and Chief Chemist Carl Duisberg [<=1900]. Their first line of thinking is to mix non-explosive agents in with the high explosive filling of artillery shells. The first weapons to go to full trial are the Ni-Geschoss 105mm light howitzer round, containing ortho diaminidine chlorosulphonate, and the T-Granat 150mm medium howitzer round, containing xylyl bromide. Both agents have a tear-gas effect in laboratory conditions but neither is particularly effective in the field [sub-thread continues at 21st October (ASIDE) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS]

********** THE ARRAS-VIMY FRONT TAKES SHAPE **********
********** THE ARRAS-VIMY FRONT TAKES SHAPE **********
********** THE ARRAS-VIMY FRONT TAKES SHAPE **********

1914 [Thursday 1st-5th October] The Race to the Sea [VIII - The First Battle of Arras]: [Continued from 29th September] Following the Battle of Albert [<=25th September] this five-day battle is the fourth attempt to exploit the still-unstable northern end of the Western Front, this time around Arras [maplink at 29th September], roughly mid-way between the Somme and the Belgian frontier. It is fought between de Maud'huy's [29th September<=6th October] Tenth Army and Crown Prince Rupprecht's [25th September<=10th October] Sixth (Bavarian) Army. Both armies are being continually reinforced from transfers and reserves, and so neither makes any significant breakthrough. Nevertheless the French have to fight hard to hold the Germans around Ablain Saint-Nazaire [map, etc.], thus preventing them from getting round behind Arras from the north.

ASIDE - NOTRE DAME DE LORETTE: The fighting in the Ablain Saint-Nazaire sector continued through until October 1915 [=>1915 (25th September [Third Battle of Artois])] and the local basilica - Notre Dame de Lorette - was expanded after the war to host the largest of all the French WW1 military cemeteries.

Rupprecht also secures the high ground at Vimy [map, etc.] and on 5th October takes the town of Lens [map, etc.], 10 miles north of Arras [sub-thread continues at 5th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

ASIDE: The Battles of Noyon, Picardy, Albert, and Arras took place along a more or less straight line northward from Compiègne. If this line is now extended it passes through Ieper/Ypres [map, etc.], follows the line of the Ijzerdijk Canal to Diksmuide [map, etc.], and then finally arrives at the reclaimed marshlands of the Yser Estuary at Nieuwpoort [map, etc.].

1914 [Friday 2nd October] Having been under surveillance by MI5 for five weeks Carl Hans Lody [27th August<=executed 6th November] is finally arrested at a hotel in Killarney, Ireland, taken to London, and locked up in the Tower of London. He will be convicted of
treason on 2nd November and executed by firing squad on 6th November. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Friday 2nd October] Islam in WW1 [II - The Decision to Mobilise the Imams]: [Continued from 30th August] The diplomat/Egyptologist Max ["Abu Jihad"] von Oppenheim [Wikipedia biography=>??th October] promotes a Denksschrift [= memorandum] entitled Die Revolutionierung der islamischen Gebiete unserer Feinde [= "How to Incite Revolution in our Enemies' Muslim Possessions"] within the German Foreign Office. The thrust of his argument is that Britain, France, and Russia all have extensive Muslim territorial possessions, not to mention tens of thousands of Muslim troops in their armies, all ripe for - to use the modern term - radicalising. The Foreign Office recognises the force of Oppenheim's argument and puts him in charge of their Nachrichtendiens für den Orient [= "Intelligence Bureau for the Orient"; Wikipedia factsheet]. His first priority is to persuade the Turkish sultan, Mehmed V [1909 (31st March)<=>5th November] (a) to enter the war on the side of the Central Powers, and then (b) to proclaim himself spokesperson for the Islamic world in general [the Islamic sub-thread continues as Goeben and Breslau at 27th October, but see the two entries at ??th October for the parallel efforts to exploit both Hindu and Irish nationalist sensitivities in like manner ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES] Schwanitz, W.G. (2004). Max von Oppenheim und der Heilige Krieg. Sozial Geschichte, 19(3,5):28-59.

1914 [Saturday 3rd October] Having been disembarking at Marseilles since 26th September, Sir James Willcocks' [Wikipedia biography=>10th October] I Indian Corps now starts to assemble around Orléans. Having been eased out of his job as Director of the Press Bureau [28th September<=>1915 (27th March)] only a week beforehand, Frederick E. Smith [28th September<=>1915 (24th May)] now joins this corps as Recording Officer, a position he will hold until 1915 when he will return to politics. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Sunday 4th October] The first 540 volunteers of the [Royal]1917 Newfoundland Regiment [Wikipedia factsheet=>1915 (20th September)] set sail from St. Johns, Newfoundland, aboard the troopship SS Florizel [Wikipedia shipography]. Their number includes one of Newfoundland's two general practitioners, a certain Arthur Wakefield [no convenient biography]=>1916 (1st July [Battle of Beaumont-Hamel]), who, as local representative of the Legion of Frontiersmen [10th August<=>2nd November (ASIDE)], has done much to facilitate the mobilisation. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]


1914 [Sunday 4th-5th October] The Belgian Campaign [XI - The Battle of Antwerp (Help at Hand)]: [Continued from 28th September] As promised by Winston Churchill [28th September<=>13th October] in his 3rd October meeting with King Albert [28th September<=>9th October], the Royal Marine Brigade1, part of Archibald Paris's [Wikipedia biography=>6th October] 63rd (Royal Naval) Division [Wikipedia factsheet], arrives in Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] by train at 0100hr on 4th October and is immediately moved forward into the defences. At much the same time back in England, (1) the remainder of the 63rd (Royal Naval) Division, (2) [Sir]1915 Thompson Capper's [Wikipedia biography=>6th October] newly created 7th Division2, and (3) Byng's [29th September<=>6th October] newly created 3rd Cavalry Division have all been ordered to ports of embarkation. The Naval Division is earmarked for the defences at Antwerp itself, and the other two formations are destined [=6th October] to hold open the Antwerp-Nieuwpoort escape corridor. The Naval Division arrives at Dunkirk [maplink at 24th August] on 5th October but the two larger formations not until 6th and 8th October, respectively. The French are
also sending what they can spare, including the 87e Territorial Division [Wikipedia factsheet] and their own naval infantry, the Fusiliers Marins [Wikipedia factsheet] commanded by Pierre A. Ronarch [Wikipedia biography]. Fortunately for the Allies there is something of a lull in the German attacks at Antwerp while they bring forward their super-heavy siege artillery to engage the inner ring of forts [sub-thread continues at 5th October ...], [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1ASIDE: Aston [<=25th September] was taken sick on 29th September and most histories mention only Paris from this point in time.

2ASIDE: 7th Division includes (with their foreign service suntans just about faded) 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [3rd September<=12th October] and 2nd Bn Bedfordshire Regiment.

1914 [Monday 5th October] The Race to the Sea [IX - The B.E.F. Moves Closer to Home]: [Continued from 1st October] The B.E.F. starts relocating from the Aisne. For those units unlucky enough not to do the journey by train the 150-mile march to Flanders will take some eight days to complete. Joffre [29th September<=8th October] and Sir John French [13th September<=8th October] have agreed that they are to re-assemble in the triangle Doullens [map, etc] /Arras [maplink at 29th September]/Saint-Pol-sur-Ternoise [map, etc]. Haig's [13th September<=10th October] I Corps is the last to hand over its positions to the French [sub-thread continues at 6th October ...], [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

******************************* STATE OF PLAY, 5TH OCTOBER 1914 *******************************
******************************* STATE OF PLAY, 5TH OCTOBER 1914 *******************************
******************************* STATE OF PLAY, 5TH OCTOBER 1914 *******************************

To sum up there is only a thinly defended 45-mile front between the Race to the Sea trench-line snaking northward out of Arras [<=1st October] and the Yser Estuary at Nieuwpoort [ditto] and although the well-fortified cities of Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] and Rijsel/Lille are presently preventing a precipitate German advance neither can hold out for ever. This gap we shall be referring to in the coming pages as the "Ypres Gap" (by virtue of the fact that said city is situated fairly and squarely in the middle of it). Needless to say the Germans have spotted this gap also and have quietly been assembling their cavalry north of Rijsel/Lille in readiness for a dash for the coast should the opportunity present itself.

*******************************************************************************************

1914 [Monday 5th October] The Belgian Campaign [XII - The Germans Break for the Coast]: [Continued from 4th October] In preparation for a surprise thrust westward the Germans have concentrated Gustav von Hollen's [Wikipedia biography] IV Cavalry Corps [Wikipedia factsheet] north of Rijsel/Lille [maplink at 24th August], from where it is only 40 miles to the coast at Dunkirk [ditto]. He now crosses the Lys between Armentières [map, etc] and Kortrijk/Courtrai [map, etc] (i.e., the French-Belgian border) and heads west-north-westward, skirting to the south of Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October] [sub-thread continues at 6th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1ASIDE: Von Hollen's corps presently includes the 1st Royal Bavarian Uhlans [Wikipedia factsheet] commanded by Eduard von Crailsheim [no convenient biography], on temporary attachment from Sixth (Bavarian) Army.

1914 [Monday 5th October] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXIV - Welshmen Called to Arms]: [Continued from 29th September] Wales' leading editorial cartoonist Joseph M. Staniforth [22nd September<=4th November] publishes a cartoon entitled "Remember Your Past" [see it now] in which Lloyd George's [22nd September<=9th November] notion of a distinct Welsh Army Corps [19th September<=5th December] is presented as the logical and
honourable thing for Welshmen to aspire to (and, of course, enlist in) [sub-thread continues at 23rd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CONTEMPORARY EDITORIAL COMMENT]

**1914 [Monday 5th-8th October]** **Coronel and the Falklands [VI - Latest Intelligence]:** [Continued from 14th September] The Naval Intelligence Division [26th August=>13th October] receives a wireless intercept from its agents in the Pacific ordering **von Spee** [14th September=>12th October] to patrol in the south-east Pacific along the coast of Chile. This information is duly passed to **Cradock**'s [10th September=>1st November] taskforce, along with the following order ...

"It appears that Scharnhorst [5th August=>1st November] and Gneisenau [ditto] are working across [the Pacific] to South America. You must be prepared to meet them in company, possibly with a Dresden scouting for them" (quoted in Bennett, 1962, p19).

Cradock replies to the effect that his local intelligence sources have indicated that the German squadron might well include not one, but three, light cruisers [sub-thread continues at 1st November ...]. **Luce** [10th September=>18th October] is instructed to complete his passage of the Magellan Straits and then to scout northward along the Chilean coast, but not to go further north than Valparaiso [map, etc.] [sub-thread continues at 12th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

**1914 [Tuesday 6th-7th October]** **The Belgian Campaign [XIII - The Battle of Antwerp (The Escape Corridor)]:** [Continued from 5th October] On the morning of 6th October the remaining elements of arrive in Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] by train from Dunkirk and are marched forward to join the Royal Marine Brigade in the defences. Around the same time **Capper**'s [4th October=>8th October] **7th Division** [4th October=>8th October] starts to disembark at Zeebrugge [map, etc]. **Byng**'s [4th October=>8th October] **3rd Cavalry Division**, however, will not be able to sail until 1000hr on 7th October because of delays in the transports out of Southampton, and will not arrive until the 8th October. Around noon on the 6th October **Henry S. Rawlinson** [1st Baron Rawlinson]1919 [Wikipedia biography] arrives to take overall command of the British in this sector, and his first act is to move 7th Division forward 10 miles to secure Bruges [map, etc]. Allied high command, meanwhile, has been considering whether (a) to direct Rawlinson eastward in an attempt to relieve Antwerp (but run the risk of being cut off should the Antwerp-Nieuwpoort escape corridor be cut), or (b) to direct him south-eastward to Ghent [map, etc], there to prop open the escape corridor itself (thus ensuring a safe withdrawal from Antwerp). In the event this important decision is made for them on 7th October when the German 37th Landwehr1 Brigade takes advantage of the morning river mists to establish a bridgehead across the Scheldt ...

**ASIDE - ANTWERP AND THE SCHELDT:** The Scheldt is one of Europe's oldest commercially worked waterways, with a large west-facing estuary onto the North Sea. The river is fed from the Flanders Plain [Wikipedia geography] and performs a counter-clockwise semi-circular sweep before reaching its estuary. Antwerp is at the base of this estuary, protected by the concentric fortification lines of the National Redoubt [<=1874]. The river upstream of Antwerp is thus a natural defensive shoulder for an escape corridor down the coast. The Germans are presently both pressuring the fortifications themselves and attempting to break that corridor with a left-hook outflanking manoeuvre across the river. It will later emerge (Edmonds, 1925) that **von Beseler** [28th September=>14th November] has been told in very clear terms to get the job over with, so there is little doubt that the Allied decision to defend Ghent was the right one.

... at Schoonaarde [map, etc], 20 miles upstream from (but actually south-west of) Antwerp and directly threatening the Allied escape corridor. Rawlinson is accordingly

ASIDE: The song is destined to be resurrected in the 1960s in the Charles Chilton/Joan Littlewood musical "Oh! What a Lovely War" [Wikipedia factsheet], and features prominently in the opening minutes of Richard Attenborough's 1969 movie of the same name [see it performed now].

1914 [Tuesday 6th-12th October] The Race to the Sea [XI - Arras to Rijsel/Lille]: [Continued from 5th October] Realising that the German Army may no longer have the strength to force a decisive breakthrough on the Western Front, and with a relatively stable trench-line in place south of Vimy Ridge, von Falkenhayn [25th September<=10th October] identifies Rijsel/Lille [maplink at 24th August] as the most strategically advantageous northern headquarters city. It is, however, quite strongly fortified [<=1667 (10th August)] in its own right and has de Maud'huy's [1st October=>8th October] Tenth Army close at hand to the south-west. Von Falkenhayn accordingly orders Manfred von Richthofen's [Wikipedia biography] 8th October 1 Cavalry Corps and von der Marwitz's [21st August=>8th October] II Cavalry Corps to attack Tenth Army's southern flank between Lens [maplink at 1st October] and Lille, but they make little progress. Lille finally capitulates on 12th October and
will then remain in German hands until October 1918. Its loss is noteworthy in the present context because it means that Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October], 25 miles to the north-west, suddenly acquires immense strategic value as the town which is going to anchor the northernmost extremity of the Western Front [sub-thread continues at 8th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** THE FINAL BEAD ON THE STRING **********

1914 [Wednesday 7th-9th October] The Belgian Campaign [XIV - The Germans Take Ieper/Ypres]: [Continued from 6th October] Von Hollen's [5th October<=12th October] IV Cavalry Corps makes good progress westward from the Lys, their main numbers passing south of Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October] and making for the high ground at and past Kemmel [map, etc.]. One column - the 8000 men of Kurt von Unger's [no convenient biography] 3rd Cavalry Division - enters Ypres on 7th October, but it is only passing through and will have moved on again the following day, to fan out to the west of the town on a line from Rousbrugge [map, etc.] to Hazebrouck [map, etc.]. On 9th October the 1st Royal Bavarian Uhlan Regiment [5<=5th October (ASIDE)] engages in a fire-fight at Hazebrouck with Antoine de Mitry's [Wikipedia biography] II Cavalry Corps. Von Hollen's other two divisions - the 6th and the Bavarians - occupy the low hills of Katsberg/Mont des Cats [map, etc.] and Zwartheberg/Mont Noir [map, etc.], west of Kemmel. In the end, however, the gathering Allied forces are too strong for von Hollen and he withdrawal to regroup on a line from Belle/Bailleul [map, etc.] to Armentières [maplink at 5th October] [sub-thread continues at 6th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [7th-14th October] The German armed merchant cruiser Kronprinz Wilhelm [4th September<=1915 (11th April)] intercepts the British freighter SS La Correntina [no convenient shipography] off the Brazilian coast and spends a week transferring fuel and stores from her before sinking her with demolition charges. The Kronprinz Wilhelm then spends the next five months patrolling the sea-lanes off Brazil and Argentina, sinking 14 further vessels [sub-thread continues at 1915 (11th April) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

********** AND SO FINALLY TO THE SEA **********

1914 [Thursday 8th-9th October] The Race to the Sea [XII - The Final Furlong]: [Continued from 6th October] Now that the first elements of the B.E.F. are in Flanders following their relocation from the Aisne, Joffre [5th October<=17th December] promotes Foch [10th September<=10th October] to serve as his Adjoint [= “Deputy”], and sets him the task of coordinating the efforts of the French, British, and Belgian armies. Foch immediately holds talks with Sir John French [5th October<=10th October] at which they agree that their joint priority is to get the B.E.F. into the line north of de Maud’huy's [6th October<=10th October] Tenth Army. It so happens that de Maud’huy has just moved his latest arrivals, XXI Corps [no convenient factsheet] under Paul Maistre [Wikipedia biography] into the line around Béthune [map, etc.], where von Richthofen's [6th October<=19th October] 1st Cavalry Corps and von der Marwitz's [<=6th October] II Cavalry Corps are in the process of being replaced by XIV Corps under Theodor von Watter [Wikipedia biography]. With infantry now facing infantry, the resulting entrenchments duly extend the Western Front northward another 14 miles from Vimy. At around the same time Smith-Dorrien’s [13th September<=10th October] II Corps has been detraining for some hours past at Abbeville [maplink at 25th September] and Sir Hubert Gough's [1900 (28th February)<=10th October] 2nd Cavalry Division is ahead of them on a line from Saint-Pol-sur-Ternoise [maplink
at 5th October] to Hesdin [map, etc.]. Foch accordingly provides II Corps with bus transport to move them forward north-east of Saint-Pol.

**ASIDE:** The reason for the urgency was the presence, south-west of Lille, of the German I and II Cavalry Corps, seeking out weak points in the Allied line. II Corps is needed to plug the gap.

Further north the 87th Infantry Division [<=4th October] has been moved into the Ieper/Ypres sector, and further north still (having been delayed waiting for its transports), Byng's [6th October<>19th October] 3rd Cavalry Division is finally disembarking at Ostend and Zeebrugge [sub-thread continues at 10th October as First Battle of Ypres ...].

********** DECISION DAY AT ANTWERP **********

1914 [Thursday 8th October] The Belgian Campaign [XVFINAL - The Battle of Antwerp (Antwerp and Ghent Evacuated)]: [Continued from 6th October] Following the successful operation by their 37th Landwehr Brigade the previous day [q.v.], the entire 4th Ersatz Division [Wikipedia factsheet] is now across the Scheldt and threatening to cut the Antwerp-Nieuwpoort escape corridor. Now, leaving behind only selected rear-guard units, the Belgians progressively withdraw their Field Army and garrison troops westward through that corridor. Rawlinson [8th October<>10th October] covers this withdrawal from Ghent, and one encircled Belgian column is rescued by a timely counter-attack by Ronarc'h's [4th October<>16th October] Fusiliers Marins. In all, around 25,000 men of the rearguard are lost, 5000 captured and 20,000 interned in Holland (these latter having crossed the Dutch border in preference to surrendering). Amongst the internees are most of Paris's [6th October<>1915 (11th April)] 1st Naval Brigade, some 1500 men, who in the confusion of the moment fail to receive the orders to withdraw. King Albert [4th October<>16th October] moves his HQ temporarily to Ostend. Ghent will be evacuated in turn on 11th October, allowing Capper's [6th October<>19th October] 7th Division [6th October<>12th October] to fall back onto Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October]. At this juncture the British command structure is rationalised, with Rawlinson's independent command being terminated and his force being incorporated - as IV Corps - into the main body of the B.E.F. [sub-thread continues at 10th October as First Battle of Ypres ...] [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

**ASIDE - TROOP QUALITY AND FIXED FORTIFICATIONS:** Edmonds (1925) will later make the following interesting observation concerning the selection of personnel for garrison duty ... 

"It would appear that the great mistake committed by all the Allies as regards fortresses in the early days of the war was that they considered any second line troops good enough to hold and defend them. This was most completely disproved, and experience [at Namur, Maubeuge, Grand Couronné, and Verdun] went to show that the best troops, or at any rate a good proportion of young troops, are required to conduct an active defence and resist the moral effect of being abandoned by the Field Army, the strain of heavy shelling, and the destruction of works supposed to be impregnable" (pp63-64).

1914 [Saturday 10th October] The Rise of Herbert Hoover [XI - Hoover to the Rescue]: [Continued from 1st September 1914] Given the rapidly developing humanitarian disaster in Belgium, the U.S. Ambassador in London, Walter Page, now suggests that Hoover, who is presently running his London-based American Citizens' Relief Committee [see 3rd August 1914], needs to be operating at a much higher level. With State Department approval, this provisional committee is duly reconstituted as a U.S.- and combatant-approved NGO [=Non-Governmental Organisation], under the banner Committee for the Relief of Belgium (CRB) [Wikipedia briefing], with Hoover in overall control, offices in Brussels,
London, Rotterdam, and New York, and a network of forwarding agents in ports around the world. Telegraph links via the U.S. Embassies in London and Brussels keep the new organisation in touch with Washington. At the same time, Émile Francqui's Comité Centrale is extended to be the Comité Nationale de Secours et d'Alimentation (CNSA) [Wikipedia briefing]. The CRB then leverages its humanitarian status by engaging in a sustained high-profile appeal for public donations ...

**CAMEO - PUBLIC SUPPORT FOR THE BELGians:** Browse the images for <CRB Belgium WW1> for a slideshow of CRB promotional material, fund-raising events, CRB/CNSA-livered ships and trucks, and similar memorabilia.

**ASIDE:** For Hoover's friends the CRB directorship was simply a job which he executed with his customary energy. For his enemies it was just as simply an opportunity for the dumping of otherwise inconvenient surpluses, taking backhanders from competing suppliers (such as America's "big five" cannery companies), and - whenever possible - insider trading [think Milo Minderbender's dad, and you won't be far out - Ed.]. By the end of the war some $900 million of donations will have been distributed.

As soon as money starts to roll in it is invested in commodity purchases, ship charterings, and the road and rail distribution network. The first shipload of grain departs the U.S. for Rotterdam 30th October [sub-thread continues at 3rd April 1917 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = STOCK MARKET AND FINANCIAL PRACTICE AND SHARP PRACTICE]

"The importance of a [scientific] conference may be measured not just by the number of Nobel prize-winners or Oxford dons it attracts, but by the number of spies" (*The Guardian*, 10th October 2017).

**CONSPIRACY TROPES - NGOs AS COVERS FOR ESPIONAGE:** Travellers make good spies, and spymasters on both sides know it. So if you happen to be going on a trip which passes even remotely close to an area of intelligence interest then you may get a friendly knock on the door before you set off, asking you ever so politely to keep your eyes open for this, that, or the other. But do not be surprised if you then get a slightly less polite knocking on your hotel door one night while you are away. Here are some recent examples [as at 24th November 2018] ...

**RELIGIOUS MISSIONARIES IN RUSSIA:** Click here for the news report "Espionage in the Guise of Religion". (This story is from the gloriously detailed "Russia Religion News" [check it out] website of Professor Paul D. Steeves, Stetson University, the very excellence of which is itself prima facie evidence of a well-resourced and sophisticated intelligence gathering network.)

**JOURNALIST IN IRAN:** Here we have the self-explanatory (and ongoing) case of Nazanin Zaghari-Ratcliffe [Wikipedia briefing], journalist and (locally) convicted spy.

**ACADEMIC IN UNITED ARAB EMIRATES:** Here we have the self-explanatory (and ongoing) case of Matthew Hedges [no briefing yet available], PhD researcher and (locally) convicted spy.

Groups of travellers are also fair game for intelligence services, but in a slightly different way, that is to say, as unwitting cover. Religious missions, for example, as well as news and film crews, tourist buses, academic conferences, and - especially - NGOs are routinely infiltrated by professional agents. Here are two fairly recent cases ...

**CAMEO - RELIGIOUS MISSIONARIES IN NORTH KOREA:** Click here for the news report "NGOs: The Hidden Truth", explaining the use of Christianity as a cover for espionage in North Korea between 2004 and 2011 by a team led by General William G. Boykin [Wikipedia biography].

**CAMEO - THE 91st/92nd FLOOR AUSTRIAN/ISRAELI ART STUDENTS:** See the entry 18th August 2001 concerning the activities, known and presumed, of the
Gelatin [Gelitin] 2005 Art Foundation on the 91st and 92nd Floors of the World Trade Center’s North Tower during Summer 2001. We have no data on what proportion of the perhaps two dozen “students” involved were genuine students, however, for a helpful summary of these events see researcher John Friend’s 2013 online documentary - YouTube it here.

ON THE SILVER SCREEN: The TV Tropes website has a considerable number of entries in this general area. Begin with the master entries <Disguise> and <NGO Superpower>, and note the detail entries for <Nebulous Evil Organisation>, <Front for Other Actions>, and <Covert Group with Mundane Front>. As for how it all works, check out the 1966 Alfred Hitchcock movie “Torn Curtain”, which has Paul Newman as a research scientist traveling behind the Iron Curtain to obtain technical secrets. Note also how the 1985 movie “Volunteers” clearly demonstrates how Peace Corps volunteers quite naturally gravitate to areas of ethno-political strife, where they equally naturally rub shoulders with an entire United Nations of intelligence gatherers, special operations teams, and local underworld.

We have attached this inset to Herbert Hoover’s work with the CRB because Burner (1978) assures us that that organisation “drew numerous American volunteers” (p74). We therefore take it as axiomatic that some of those volunteers would have been Allied intelligence officers, in the same way that the modern British Council is so “riddled with spies” that few even bother to deny it any more.

********** THE RACE TO THE SEA ENDS **********
********** THE BELGIAN CAMPAIGN ENDS **********
********** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES NOW REPLACES THEM BOTH **********
********** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES NOW REPLACES THEM BOTH **********
********** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES NOW REPLACES THEM BOTH **********
********** A.K.A. ”THE GLORIOUS ENTERPRISE”1 **********
********** A.K.A. ”THE GRAVEYARD OF THE OLD CONTEMPTIBLES”12 **********
********** A.K.A. ”THE MASSACRE OF THE INNOCENTS”13 **********

1914 [Saturday 10th-20th October] The First Battle of Ypres [I - The Encounter Battles (La Bassée, Phase One)]: [Continued from 8th October Race to the Sea and Belgian Campaign] Now that the armies of Antwerp and Ghent are falling back, the line of the Western Front from Compiègne [<=1st October (ASIDE)] to the sea is complete. Nevertheless at many points it is only thinly held, not least because the bulk of the B.E.F. has yet to arrive from the Aisne. Smith-Dorrien’s [8th October<=26th December] II Corps has been busily assembling in the L’Authie valley around Doullens [maplink at 5th October], 12 miles north-east of Abbeville [maplink at 25th September], but Haig’s [5th October<=12th October] I Corps is only just beginning to disengage on the Chemin des Dames, Pulteney’s [13th September<=12th October] III Corps is only just beginning to detrain at St. Omer [maplink at 5th August], and Rawlinson’s [9th October<=13th October] IV Corps is, of course, still falling back from Ghent. Moreover Henry Watkis’s [no convenient biography=>19th October] 3rd (Lahore) Division (the first of the two divisions making up Willcocks’ [3rd October<=31st October] I Indian Corps) is now preparing to move northward from its base at Orléans [<=3rd October], and Sir Charles A. Anderson’s [no convenient biography=>23rd November] 7th (Meerut) Division is at Marseilles patiently waiting for the accommodation at Orléans to become free. Against this background Sir John French [8th October<=12th October] meets with Foch [8th October<=21st October] at the latter’s headquarters at Doullens [maplink at 5th October] to approve a two-pronged attack as soon as practicable to relieve Rijssel/Lille [maplink at 24th August]. The B.E.F. is to attack north of the city and de Maud’huy’s [6th October<=17th December] Tenth Army south of it. This meeting is noteworthy in the present context because it marks the beginning of what will go on to become known as the ”First Battle of Ypres”, a six-week-long succession of more or less simultaneous lesser battles along a 30-mile front. The first six of these lesser battles are ...
The Fall of Lille [this entry]; The Battle of La Bassée [begins this entry]; The Battle of Mesen/Messines [separate entry at 12th October]; The Battle of Armentières [separate entry at 12th October]; The Battle of the Yser [separate entry at 16th October]; The Battle of Menin [separate entry at 17th October]. After 17th October further pointers will be given.

In the event it is too late to save Lille, for it falls on the night of 11th/12th October to a surprise attack from the south-east by XIX Corps under Maximilian von Laffert [Wikipedia biography]. The first of the field battles - later to be treated academically as the Battle of La Bassée [map, etc.] - then begins on 12th October when Smith-Dorrien's II Corps moves forward from Saint-Pol-sur-Ternoise [maplink at 5th October] to the line of the Canal d'Aire just north of Béthune [maplink at 8th October], to confront the combined German I and II Cavalry Corps [<=8th October]. Their objective is to push north-eastward in the direction of Lille.

ASIDE: It is worth recording some of the lesser locations in the vicinity of Béthune because - as often happened - these outstations featured more heavily in the detailed action and the subsequent historical narrative than did the town itself. Within a five-mile radius of Béthune to the east, and squarely astride the road to La Bassée, we have Givenchy-lès-la-Bassée [map, etc.], Cuinchy [map, etc.], and Festubert [map, etc.], while clustered together within a ten-mile radius to the north-east we have Neuve Chapelle [map, etc.], Laventie [map, etc.], Fromelles [map, etc.], and Aubers [map, etc.].

Smith-Dorrien has the two divisions of Allenby's [8th September=>12th October] I Cavalry Corps on his flanks (specifically, Gough's [8th October=>27th October] 2nd Cavalry Division to his left and - newly promoted - [Sir]1917 Henry de Beauvoir De Lisle's [Wikipedia biography] 1st Cavalry Division to his right). Beyond Gough to his right he has de Maud'huy and the advancing line of entrenchment. Beyond De Lisle to his left the situation is still highly fluid, but this will shortly be resolved by the Battle of Armentières [dealt with separately at 12th October]. During the night of 11th/12th October a German attack in de Maud'huy's sector captures Vermelles [map, etc.], thereby robbing Smith-Dorrien of a solid right flank and causing him to re-orient his advance eastward from Béthune rather than north-eastward. Thus by evening on 12th October the corps holds a line from (south to north) Givenchy to Vieille-Chapelle [map, etc.]

ASIDE: The military histories locate the northern end of this line at "Fosse" or "La Fosse". This, however, is merely a farm a few hundred yards north of Vieille-Chapelle, and has no Web presence in its own right.

On 13th October a day-long German counter-attack manages to retake Givenchy, and similar heavy fighting takes place on 14th and 15th October around Cuinchy. Around the same time Crown Prince Rupprecht's [1st October=>12th October] Sixth (Bavarian) Army moves its VII Corps under Eberhard von Claer [Wikipedia biography] into the line to replace the I and II Cavalry Corps. On 16th October Givenchy is captured a second time, after which it is used as a pivoting point for an advance by the British left toward Aubers. But by now a second German infantry corps - XIII (Royal Württemberg) Corps under Max von Fabek [Wikipedia biography] (of whom more later) - has been moved against II Corps on the Aubers Ridge and the British advance duly grinds to a halt. Indeed on 20th October the Germans launch a major counter-attack and II Corps is forced to dig in where it stands. This latest series of entrenchments extends the line of the Western Front northward from Vermelles, through the gap between Givenchy (British) and La Bassée (German), and then on up to Fromelles and the Aubers Ridge. It is land which is fated to be hotly contested during 1915 [sub-thread continues at 12th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]
1914 (Monday 12th October) The previously independent 19th Infantry Brigade (including 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [13th September=>16th October], who have just only completed the eight-day march up from the Aisne) is now formally attached to Snopes [31st August=>1915 (14th March)] 6th Division [1st October=>1st November] Within Pulteney’s [10th October=>next entry] III Corps. Around the same time von Falkenhayn [10th October=>next entry] moves Württemberg [25th September=>19th October] and his Fourth Army staff from the Ardennes sector and puts them in command of his newly arrived reserves. This “new” Fourth Army starts to arrive in Flanders between 10th and 14th October and consists of XXII Reserve Corps under (von Falkenhayn’s older brother) Eugen von Falkenhayn [Wikipedia biography=>21st October], XXIII Reserve Corps under Georg von Kleist [Wikipedia biography], XXVI Reserve Corps under Otto von Hügel [Wikipedia biography=>1915 (8th May)], and XXVII Reserve Corps under Adolph von Carlowitz [Wikipedia biography=>21st October]. At much the same time, with their task at Antwerp/Anvers [maplink at 12th August] now completed, von Bleseler’s [6th October=>16th October] III Reserve Corps is also reassigned to Fourth Army. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

ASIDE: Note that the German "August Volunteers" were already in the field in October 1914 whilst Kitchener's "New Army" was still many months away from readiness. This had much to do with the ability of Germany's far larger standing army to support the building of new units around cadres of experienced troops [=6th October (ASIDE #1)]. By deploying this new blood in the west rather than in the east von Falkenhayn was attempting to reverse the errors - already noted [=14th September (ASIDE)] - of his predecessor. It very nearly won him the war, and it cost the regular British Army dearly stopping him, with Edmonds (1925) reporting 58,155 casualties in the period 14th October to 30th November, that is to say, (very) roughly half of those taking part. (We recommend Foley (2014 online at http://defenceindepth.co/2014/09/23/the-first-battle-of-ypres-and-problem-of-counting-casualties/?blogsub=confirming#blog_subscription-3) for a quick introduction to the problems of counting casualties in battles such as First Ypres.)

1914 (Monday 12th-19th October) The First Battle of Ypres [II - The Encounter Battles (First Mesen/Messines and Armentières, Phase One)]: [Continued from 10th October] This three-week battle is fought for positional advantage at the unstable northern end of the Western Front in the vicinity of Armentières [maplink at 5th October] and Mesen/Messines [map, etc.]. Concerned by the growing strength of Pulteney’s [preceding entry=>19th October] III Corps between St. Omer [maplink at 5th August] and Hazebrouck [maplink at 7th October] von Falkenhayn [preceding entry=>19th October] has instructed elements of Crown Prince Rupprecht’s [10th October=>19th October] Sixth (Bavarian) Army to forestall the inevitable British offensive by securing the high ground south and east of Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October].

ASIDE: Again it is worth recording some of the lesser locations in this vicinity because these, too, featured heavily in the detailed actions of this and the following years: The high ground in question includes (from west to east, but gradually curving northward) Katsberg/Mont des Cats [maplink at 7th October], Zwarteberg/Mont Noir [ditto], Kemmel [ditto], Wytschaete [map, etc.], Messines itself, Ploegsteert [map, etc.], Comines [map, etc.], Gheluvelt [map, etc.], Zonnebeke [use the Gheluvelt map], and (last but very far from least) Passchendaele [map, etc.].
For his part Pulteney has been ordered to move his forces forward to form a line between (south to north) Armentières and Wytschaete. His axis of advance therefore takes him south of the high ground between Mont des Cats and Kemmel, still held by advanced elements of von Hollen's [7th October=>19th October] IV Cavalry Corps after their push forward some days previously [=7th October]. On 12th October the British advance begins with elements of Allenby's [10th October=>19th October] Cavalry Corps forcing the Germans from the first of these heights while III Corps' infantry advances toward Méteren [map, etc.], just outside Belle/Bailleul [maplink at 7th October], von Hollen's headquarters town. Von Hollen, however, has orders not to try to hold the town and therefore falls back in the direction of Ploegsteert and Armentières.

******* HISTORICALLY SIGNIFICANT STRATEGY *******

ASIDE: It will later emerge that von Falkenhayn had seen the British offensive coming and, with his "August volunteers" about to swing the war of numbers in his favour, had decided to absorb its initial impact by falling back onto the heights at and east of the line from (south to north) Ploegsteert - Messines - Wytschaete. [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

In the early hours of 15th October Allenby sends out reconnaissance patrols along the Lys. Around the same time Conneau's [<=4th September] I Cavalry Corps secures Estaires [map, etc.] before pushing forward to the Lys at Saillly-sur-la-Lys [map, etc.]. Pulteney's infantry follows the cavalry to consolidate the river crossings. Overnight 15th/16th October the first of Haig's [10th October=>19th October] two I Corps divisions - 2nd Division [Wikipedia factsheet=>1915 (25th September)] under Henry S. Horne [1st Baron Horne]1919 [Wikipedia biography] - starts to detrain at Hazebrouck.

ASIDE: Haig's other division - 1st Division [Wikipedia factsheet=>1915 (25th September)] under [Sir]1921 Richard C. B. Haking [Wikipedia biography] - is presently entraining on the Aisne, having just been relieved on the Chemin des Dames by a French unit. This is the unit containing the two Welsh battalions most heavily committed on the Western Front so far - see the status report at 1st November.

On 16th October Sir John French [10th October=>21st October] orders both III Corps and Rawlinson's [10th October=>16th October] IV Corps to go on the attack, the former occupying Ploegsteert, "Hill 63" [no convenient factsheet], and Nieuwerkerke/Neuve Eglise [map, etc.], and the latter securing the line Gheluvelt - Zonnebeke.

ASIDE: IV Corps, it will be recalled [=8th October], presently only has the one infantry division - the 7th - available to it. We shall be dealing with operations north of Zonnebeke as part of the Battle of the Yser [=16th October]. 7th Division brings with it, of course, 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [4th October=>19th October].

On 17th October III Corps enters Armentières more or less without a fight, the defenders having fallen back to the Pérenchies Ridge, some four miles to the east. 7th Division spends the day on stand-by to give assistance if called upon. On 18th October III Corps advances toward the Pérenchies Ridge, but fails to take it and consolidates instead on a line through Prêmesques [map, etc.], while 7th Division inches forward with caution along the Ypres-Menin highway.

ASIDE: It will later emerge that Sir John French had wanted Rawlinson to go full-out for the town of Menin [map, etc.], but that the orders had been misunderstood.

On 19th October, with his troops in need of a breathing space and conscious of a German build-up, Sir John French calls the advance to a halt and instructs III Corps...
and IV Corps to dig in [sub-thread continues at 16th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

**ASIDE:** The Second Battle of Mesen/Messines - the battle for the "Messines Ridge" - will take up where the First left off, but not for another three years [=1917 (7th June)].

1914 [Monday 12th-18th October] **Coronel and the Falklands [VII - Von Spee Still Moving Eastward]:** [Continued from 5th October] Von Spee's [5th October<=26th October] Asia Squadron re-coals at Easter Island [map, etc.], joining forces with (from Mexican waters) SMS Leipzig [5th August<=31st October] and (from the South Atlantic) SMS Dresden [10th September<=1st November] [sub-thread continues at 18th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

**ASIDE:** Bennett (1962) describes Leipzig's arrival at Easter Island as "a curious coincidence" (p87) since her captain was unaware of von Spee's precise itinerary. For our own part we suspect perhaps a greater level of pre-arrangement and secret code-worded instructions, so that one's wireless transmissions would remain vague to an intercepting enemy - see the difference between deciphering and decoding in the Companion Resource.

1914 [Tuesday 13th-14th October] **WW1 Codebreaking [III - Ewing Gets Brain and Hands]:** [Continued from 2nd September] On 13th October the Russians deliver the codebook taken from SMS Magdeburg [<=26th August] personally to the First Lord of the Admiralty Winston Churchill [4th October<=1st December]. The following day Churchill appoints the Director of the Naval Intelligence Division (DID) [Sir]\(^\text{1928}\) Henry F. Oliver [<=7th August] as his Naval Secretary, replacing him as DID by [Sir]\(^\text{1918}\) William R. ["Blinker Hall"] Hall [Wikipedia biography]7th December (ASIDE)), In Room 40, meanwhile, Sir James A. Ewing [<=7th September] has been joined by Alastair G. Denniston [Wikipedia biography], Richard F. Herschell, 2nd Baron Herschell [no convenient biography], and Charles Godfrey [no convenient biography] [continues at 16th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Thursday 15th October] The International Committee of the Red Cross [1876 (6th February)<=21st October] sets up its International Prisoners-of-War Agency [no convenient factsheet]. By the end of 1914 it will employ 1200 mostly volunteer staff. [THREAD = NEUTRAL COUNTRIES AND AID AGENCIES]

1914 [??th October] **The Baghdad Railway [V - Baghdad to Samarra]:** [Continued from 11th July] The latest 120km section of track opens. It is the first section to be built heading north-westward out of Baghdad, but it is still far from joining up with the line coming south-eastward from Istanbul. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [??th October] **Hindu Nationalism in WW1 [I - The Decision to Radicalise the Hindus]:** Having set its sights on the Islamic world [<=2nd October] von Oppenheim's Nachrichtendienst für den Orient now attempts to do likewise for the Hindu population in British India. They therefore covertly approach Hindu nationalist leaders and offer to smuggle them the arms needed for their struggle [sub-thread continues at 1915 (8th March) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1914 [??th October] **Irish Home Rule [XXX - The Decision to Radicalise the Irish]:** [Continued from 18th September] Having set things in motion to destabilise the Islamic and Hindu worlds [<=preceding two entries] the German Foreign Office now seeks ways to do likewise for the Irish Nationalist population in Ireland [sub-thread continues at 20th November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1914 [Friday 16th-18th October] **The First Battle of Ypres [III - The Encounter Battles (The Battles of the Yser and Diksmuide)]:** [Continued from 13th October] With the Battles of La
Bassée [<=10th October], Mesen/Messines [<=12th October], and Armentières [ditto] raging South of Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October], this battle is fought for control of the final sector of the Western Front in the Yser Valley to the north of the town. The battle begins with von Beseler’s [12th October<=21st October] III Corps spending two days mopping up stragglers from Antwerp east of the river. Then on 18th October "in a most determined manner" it attacks (Edmonds, 1925, p117) the Yser bridges between Nieuwpoort [maplink at 1st October] and Dixmuide [map, etc.]. Royal Navy gunfire helps repel the attack at Nieuwpoort and Ronarc’h’s [9th October<=27th October] Fusiliers Marins (under the overall command of the Belgian sector commander Jacques [<=24th August]) stand firm at Dixmuide. 19th Brigade [date pointers as next] (including 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [12th October<=19th October]) spends the night of 16th October moving up into G.H.Q. reserve at Vlamerdinghe [map, etc.] (Dunn, 1938) [sub-thread continues at 19th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 17th October] Previously stationed in Ceylon the 31st Fortress Company, Royal Engineers [no convenient factsheet], commanded by Frank Bertram Legh [De Santis (2006) biography=>14th December], arrives back in Britain [sub-thread continues at 14th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1914 [Saturday 17th-31st October] The Eastern Campaign [V - The Battle of the Vistula (The Russian Counter-Offensive)]: [Continued from 28th September] Following the initial successful German advance [<=28th September] Ruzsky [<=28th September] now counter-attacks in force, and in the coming two weeks pushes the German Ninth Army back to where it started. The outcome is therefore considered a major Russian victory, albeit with disproportionately heavy casualties [sub-thread continues at 11th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

******** "NOTHING VERY POWERFUL AND NOTHING VERY FAST"! ******

1914 [Sunday 18th-23rd October] Coronel and the Falklands [VIII - Cradock Rounds the Horn]: [Continued from 12th October] HMS Canopus [10th September<=27th October] arrives at Port Stanley, Falkland Islands, but is forced by engineering problems to delay her onward departure. When on 22nd October it becomes apparent that even after repairs she will only be capable of 12 knots cruising speed/16½ knots battle speed, Cradock [5th October<=27th October] decides to go after Luce [5th October<=1st November] in HMS Good Hope [Wikipedia shipography=>27th October], leaving Canopus to follow with the three fleet-colliers on 23rd October [sub-thread continues at 26th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

**ASIDE:** This phrase from Bennett (1962, p95), summarising the technical shortcomings of the ships at Admiral Cradock’s disposal. Cradock had been promised the powerful and fast HMS Defence [Wikipedia shipography=>27th October] but she was still a fortnight’s sailing away.

********** ALL HELL BREAKS LOOSE **********
********** ALL HELL BREAKS LOOSE **********
********** ALL HELL BREAKS LOOSE **********

1914 [Monday 19th October-20th October] The First Battle of Ypres [IV - The Main Event (The German Counter-Offensive Begins)]: [Continued from 16th October] With his attack on the Yser already under way von Falkenhayn [12th October<=27th October] now formally extends his counter-offensive into the next four sectors southward, namely the “Ypres Salient” (Rawlinson), Messines (Allenby), Armentières (Pulteney), and La Bassée (Smith-Dorrien).

**ASIDE:** The battlefield east of Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October] is contained within a semi-circular defence perimeter centred on the town itself. On 19th October the perimeter of this salient - later to be poetised as “The Immortal Salient” (Brice, 1925) - has a radius of some 12 miles. However as the battle runs its course this perimeter is gradually driven in upon
itself until its radius is only half this. The Second [=>1915 (21st April)] and Third [=>1917 (31st July)] Battles of Ypres slowly and painfully reverse the process.

This offensive is mounted by the German (New) Fourth and Sixth (Bavarian) Armies under **Württemberg** [12th October<=1915 (22nd April)] and **Crown Prince Rupprecht** [12th October<=27th October], respectively, the former attacking north of the Ypres-Menin Road and the latter from **Armentières** [maplink at 5th October] Southward to **La Bassée** [maplink at 10th October]. The German I and IV Cavalry Corps, under **von Richthofen** [<=8th October] and **von Hollen** [=12th October] respectively, threaten the angle between the two infantry armies, that is to say, from a line between **Menin** [maplink at 12th October] and **Warneton** [map, etc.]. Württemberg commits his four fresh reserve corps as follows (clockwise around the Ypres Salient from the north): XXII Corps join III Corps on the Yser, XXIII Corps advancing from the north-east to threaten **Roeselaare/Roulers** [map, etc.], XXVI Corps advancing from the east to threaten **Passchendaele** [maplink at 12th October], and XXVII Corps advancing from the south-east to threaten **Menin** [maplink at 12th October].

At around mid-day on 19th October Württemberg's advance units close with **Rawlinson's** [12th October<=21st October] IV Corps across the latter's front, and the fighting between Rawlinson's regulars (with a fortnight's experience in the line behind them) and his seriously inexperienced reserve corps begins in earnest. As the day passes both **Capper's** [8th October<=1915 (13th May)] 7th Division and **Byng's** [8th October<=21st October] 3rd Cavalry Division are pushed back, losing **Moorslede** [map, etc.] and rallying instead on Passchendaele, two miles to the rear.

**CAMEO - 1/RWF AT DADIZELE:** On 19th October the 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [12th October<=21st October] takes part in a localised 7th Division attack at Dadizele [map, etc.], some four miles north of Menin [maplink at 12th October]. They advance somewhat over a mile until forced to a halt by "very heavy artillery fire" (Edmonds, 1925, p134), losing 7 officers and 110 other ranks killed, wounded, or missing.

**DOUBLE ASIDE:** We shall repeat these Welsh regiment battle cameos for the remainder of this resource. We shall always include the date, so that when modern war cemetery walkers see a cluster of headstones with the same date of death they will have a better idea as to the where and why of it. [This will never a perfect science, of course, because many of the deceased died of wounds after the event.]

During the night of 19th/20th October **Haig's** [12th October<=21st October] I Corps is moved forward to concentrate between **Poperinghe** [map, etc.] and Ypres, to await developments. At the same time 19th Brigade [date pointers as next] (including 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [16th October<=1st November]) marches southward to **Laventie** [maplink at 10th October], in order to "fill a hole" between II Corps and III Corps.

**CAMEO - 2/RWF AT LAVENTIE:** Between 20th October and 14th November **2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers** will stay in the line around Laventie, much of the time at or facing **Fromelles** [maplink at 10th October]. During this time losses gradually accumulate, with Dunn's (1938) daily totals adding up to 263 killed and wounded.

On 20th October Rawlinson withdraws from Passchendaele in order to maintain a cohesive perimeter. At the same time the two German cavalry corps move forward against the Messines sector and Rupprecht goes on the offensive south of Armentières. **Allenby's** [12th October<=21st October] Cavalry Corps is forced to fall back onto a line between **Ploegsteert Wood** [maplink at 12th October] and **Hollebeke** [map, etc.], while **Pulteney's** [=12th October] III Corps likewise has a hard time of it at Armentières, being forced back from **Prémesques** [maplink at 12th October] and **Ennetières-en-Weppes** [map, etc.]. Overnight on 20th/21st October **Watkins's** [<=10th October] 1st (Lahore) Division detains at
1914 [Wednesday 21st October] The International Committee of the Red Cross [<=15th October] and the Order of St. John [Wikipedia factsheet] form a Joint War Committee in order to coordinate Britain's humanitarian aid effort. This includes creating a network of small auxiliary hospitals around the country, each providing its nearest acute War Hospital with rehabilitation and other non-acute services. One of the first of these establishments is New Court, a large house just outside Cheltenham, which became VAD\(^1\) Hospital #16. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

\(^1\) = Voluntary Aid Detachment

ASIDE: New Court is nowadays preserved as a VAD heritage museum [see museum website].

1914 [Wednesday 21st-26th October] The First Battle of Ypres [V - The Main Event (Messines (cont.)/ Langemarck/ Dixmuide/ Zonnebeke/ Polygon Wood/ Armentières (cont.)/ Gheluvelt): (Continued from 19th October] On 21st October, realising that there is going to be no immediate Allied flanking breakthrough, Sir John French [12th October<=>27th October] formally calls off the "move" against Menin [maplink at 12th October] and orders Rawlinson's [19th October<=>27th October] IV Corps to entrench itself as best it can. He then directs Haig's [19th October<=>27th October] newly arrived I Corps to advance on Rawlinson's left in the direction of Torhout [map, etc.].

ASIDE: Torhout is some 20 miles north-north-east of Ieper/Ypres [maplink at 1st October], and so this axis of advance would take Haig out through the still fluid northern perimeter of the Salient between Dixmuide [maplink at 16th October] and Roeselaar/Roulers [maplink at 19th October] and thereby threaten the left flank of Eugen von Falkenhayn's [12th October<=>27th October] XXII Reserve Corps attacking along the Yser.

In the event it takes I Corps all day to get up to Langemarck [map, etc.], only a quarter of the way to Torhout, and there it gets bogged down at Zonnebeke [maplink at 12th October] (leading Edmonds, 1925, to conclude that I Corps was committed "twenty-four hours too late" (p160)).

CAMEO - 1/RWF AT ZONNEBEKE: On 21st October 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [19th October<=>later this entry] is particularly exposed in the fighting at Zonnebeke and suffers 260 casualties.

Also on 21st October Grossetti's [6th September<=>7th November] 42e Division - heroes of the defence of Sézanne during the critical 48 hours of the Battle of the Marne [<=6th September] - detains at Nieuwpoort [maplink at 1st October] to strengthen the defences on the Yser.

ASIDE: Foch [<=10th October] is presently feverishly at work bringing in French reinforcements from wherever they can be spared and as quickly as the overloaded French railway network can cope.

On 22nd October von Beseler's [16th October<=>27th October] III Reserve Corps, covered by XXII Reserve Corps on his left, finally forces a bridgehead across the Yser at Tervaete (a minor crossing just west of Keiem [map, etc.], where there is still enough left of a demolished foot-bridge for assault engineers to repair) but Grossetti's newly arrived 42e Division helps the Belgians consolidate on a fall-back position behind the raised embankments of the Dixmuide-Veurne section of the coastal railway line, some three miles to the west. The newly appointed commander of the French troops in Belgium, Victor D'Urban [Wikipedia biography] [16th November], then decides to throw the German attack
off balance by counter-attacking out of Dixmuide four miles to the south, so as to take XXII Reserve Corps in the flank. Meanwhile Haig is struggling to hold his left at Langemarck and on his right gets driven out of nearby Poelcapelle [use the Langemarck map].

**CAMEO - 1/SWB AND 2/WELCH AT POELCAPELLE:** On 21st October both 1st Bn South Wales Borderers [25th September=>27th October] and 2nd Bn Welch Regiment [25th September=>23rd October below] are heavily engaged, firstly trying to hold, and then being forced to withdraw from, Poelcapelle.

By 1500hr Haig, too, is ordered to entrench his men where they stand.

**ASIDE:** The entrenchments of 21st October (Rawlinson) and 22nd October (Haig) will determine the basic profile of the perimeter of the Ypres Salient for the remainder of the war.

Further south Allenby’s [19th October=>1915 (?7th April)] Cavalry Corps survives a day of severe pressure around Mesen/Messines [maplink at 12th October], although the situation here will subsequently go (comparatively) quiet for 72 hours while the Germans regroup.

On 23rd October the newly arrived French IX Corps under Pierre Dubois [Wikipedia biography] sends its 17e Division to reinforce Haig's left north of Pilckem [use the Langemarck maplink at 21st October], while the fighting at Langemarck continues.

**CAMEO - 2/WELCH AT LANGEMARCK:** On 23rd October 2nd Bn Welch Regiment [21st October above=>27th October] is involved, alongside 1st Bn Gloucester Regiment and 1st Bn Coldstream Guards, in repelling "a determined attempt" to capture Langemarck.

During the night of 23rd/24th October von Carlowitz’s [12th October=>27th October] XXVII Reserve Corps mounts a succession of local night attacks against Rawlinson’s IV Corps, breaking through on his left to Polygon Wood [use the Zonnebeke maplink at 12th October], one mile south of Zonnebeke. These attacks (part of the soon-to-be-infamous Kindermord [see State of Play below]) COST 244th Reserve Infantry Regiment [no convenient factsheet] 51 out of its 57 officers [see State of Play below] and 1881 out of its 2629 lower ranks.

On 24th October Byng’s [19th October=>27th October] 3rd Cavalry Division is transferred out of IV Corps and into Allenby's depleted Cavalry Corps. Also Sir John French famously complains in a telegram to the War Office that his artillery is getting desperately low on ammunition. He is told to use it more sparingly.

**ASIDE:** The situation must have been serious because there is not a public mention of the problem in Parliament until 9th March 1915. It is then deliberately brought to the forefront of public attention a few days later [=1915 (27th March) |Shells Crisis]]. The Germans are not a whole lot better off [=10th November].

************ STATE OF PLAY, 24TH OCTOBER 1914 ************
************ STATE OF PLAY, 24TH OCTOBER 1914 ************
************ STATE OF PLAY, 24TH OCTOBER 1914 ************

At this point in time the British in particular are running so low on ammunition that they have more targets than they can cope with. All sides are also running low on men, the German August Volunteers - the nation's Kriegsfreiwilliger - having paid a particularly high price for their patriotic enthusiasm, as Edmonds (1925) will later explain ...

"The new German Reserve corps had been no match for the British regulars: in spite of their splendid bravery, they were mown down by the hundred. From intercepted wireless messages, it appeared that owing to lack of company officers, apart from losses, the Reserve corps had by the fighting of the 21st-24th been practically deprived of any power of further offence, as proved to be nearly the case" (p202).
The losses amongst the German August Volunteers would shortly be described as the Kindermord - "the slaughter of the innocents". We recommend the last letters of one Hermann Koopmann, fatally wounded on 10th November, for the insights they give - see http://www.kaiserscross.com/40312/179301.html.

**STUDENT EXERCISE - WHAT IF?**: WW1 wargamers might be interested in working through the scenario whereby von Falkenhayn conserves his August Volunteers until the following Spring, letting them gain battlefield savvy in the meantime.

On 25th October Dubois' IX Corps counter-attacks toward Roeselaare/Roulers [maplink at 19th October], making some gains. On the same day IV Corps is heavily and persistently attacked on its right at Gheluvelt [maplink at 12th October].

**CAMEO - 1/RWF AT GHELUVELT**: On 26th October the 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [earlier this entry<=27th October] is amongst the reserve units committed to stabilise the situation at Gheluvelt.

The main action on 26th October is down on the La Bassée front, where, at dawn, the Germans launch a surprise attack north of Givenchy-lès-la-Bassée [maplink at 10th October], followed at 1600hr by a heavier thrust against Neuve Chapelle [maplink at 10th October]. This latter attack breaks through to the village and creates an inconvenient west-facing "dent" in the Western Front [sub-thread continues at 27th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

******* GERMANS ADOPT CHEMICAL IRRITANT SHELLS *******

**ASIDE: Chemical Warfare [III - The Neuve Chapelle Trials]**: [Continued from 1st October] The Neuve Chapelle battle is noteworthy in the present context for the first German use of chemical munitions, namely 3000 of the brand new 105mm "Ni-Geschosse" [Wikipedia chemistry] chemically enhanced shrapnel rounds. The experiment will be assessed as a failure because nobody on the receiving end seems to have noticed any difference [sub-thread continues at 1915 (2nd January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS]

1 From *niesen*, "to sneeze", with *Geschoss*, "projectile".

**ASIDE**: After 26th October there are no further substantive German attacks on the La Bassée sector because Rupprecht's heavy artillery was being quietly re-allocated to Army Group Fabeck for use on the Ypres Salient [=27th October].

1914 [Thursday 22nd October] **Atrocity [VII - Prisoners Rumoured Shot]**: [Continued from 25th August] The Mansfield Chronicle publishes a report [full text online at http://1914-1918.invisionzone.com/forums/index.php?showtopic=158897] claiming a German atrocity at the Battle of Landrecies [=25th August]. The specific accusation is that at least 14 Royal Engineers from a captured cabling party were murdered in cold blood by their captors [sub-thread continues at 4th December ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1914 [Friday 23rd October] The German chemist Emil Fischer [Wikipedia biography] is one of 93 prominent German academics and men of letters who sign an open letter entitled "An die Kulturwelt" [= "To the Civilised World"] [Wikipedia full text online], in which they protest that Allied propaganda has unjustifiably besmirched their country's good name. They deny, for example, the atrocities they have been loudly accused of in Belgium, which, if they happened at all, were acts of legitimate self-defence. Other signatories include the composer Engelbert Humperdinck, the physicists Walther H. Nernst [=1st October] and Max Planck, the psychologist Wilhelm Wundt, and the discoverer of X-rays, Wilhelm Roentgen. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]
1914 [Sunday 25th October] **Irish Home Rule [XXXI - The Irish Volunteers Get Organised]**: [Continued from ??th October] A convention of the Irish Volunteers [16th August<=1915 (10th June)] ratifies a Constitution and establishes a 50-seat General Council and a nine-man Executive. They will spend the rest of the year creating an administrative structure including the appointments of a Chief of Staff (Eoin MacNeill [Wikipedia biography]>=1916 (17th March)), and Directors of Armaments, Training, Logistics, etc. The Volunteers' fund-raising campaign in America is led from New York City by Sir until 1916 Roger Casement [Wikipedia biography]>=20th November, of whom more shortly [sub-thread continues at 20th November ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1\^{ASIDE}: Between 1895 and 1911 Casement had been a loyal British civil servant and minor diplomat, and had been knighted in July 1911. In some histories his radicalisation is seen as a reaction to the intransigence of the Ulster Unionists in their opposition to the Home Rule Bill between 1912 and 1914. Others (e.g., Mitchell, 2003) wonder whether it may have started earlier. His knighthood was formally annulled upon his conviction for treason in 1916. Mitchell, A. (2003). Casement. London: Haus.

### **** BRITAIN GOES A-WOOING ****

1914 [Sunday 25th October/12th December] On 25th October the New York Times publishes a paper by the American lawyer James M. Beck [Wikipedia biography] entitled "The Case of the Double Alliance vs The Triple Entente" [full text online]. In it Beck sets before the American people (whom he rather poetically refers to as "the Supreme Court of Civilisation") "authoritative information on the issues of the great European contest". The thrust of his case is that the German violation of Belgian neutrality was "a crime against humanity never to be forgotten". So well is the document received that on 12th December it will be republished in book form [full text online], complete with an introduction by Joseph H. Choate [Wikipedia biography], U.S. Ambassador to Britain, 1899-1905. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS]

1914 [Monday 26th-28th October] **Coronel and the Falklands [IX - Von Spee Reaches Chilean Waters]**: [Continued from 18th October] Von Spee's [12th October<=1st November] Asia Squadron recoals at Selkirk Island/Más Afuera [map, etc.; see also 1708 (1st August)] in the Juan Fernandez Archipelago, off the Chilean coast [sub-thread continues at 27th October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Tuesday 27th October] **Coronel and the Falklands [X - Cradock Reports In]**: [Continued from 26th October] Cradock [18th October<=31st October] in HMS Good Hope [18th October<=1st November] is now well on his way northward along the Chilean coastline and, during a coaling rendezvous at the Vallenar Roads\(^1\), signals the Admiralty\(^2\) to the effect that his squadron's ability to mount an effective search is still impaired by the limping HMS Canopus [6th August<=1st November] [sub-thread continues at 31st October ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1,2\^{ASIDE}: The Vallenar Roads is an archipelago anchorage off the south-western coast of Chile. The area was a wilderness in 1914, and still is. If interested, go to Google Maps and type in the coordinates minus45.05 minus73.57. As far as we have been able to ascertain, the signal referred to above would not have been sent by wireless, but by despatch, to be taken by one of the colliers or cruisers to the British Consulate at the nearest neutral port, and thence by coded diplomatic telegram to London.

1914 [Tuesday 27th October-14th November] **The First Battle of Ypres [VI - End Game (Gheluvelt\(^\text{cont.}/\) Neuve Chapelle\(^\text{cont.}/\) Messines\(^\text{cont.}/\) Dixmude\(^\text{cont.}/\))]**: [Continued from 21st October] On 27th October Kitchener [28th September<=1915 (1st January)] agrees to draw on the resources of his newly mobilised Territorial Force divisions for use as reinforcements for Sir John French [21st October<=23rd November]. French meanwhile has
had a professional falling out with Rawlinson [21st October=>1915 (25th September)] and, in effect, merges IV Corps into Haig's [21st October=>26th December] I Corps for the time being (which brings all three of the Welsh battalions in the Salient to within a few thousand yards of each other). Thus enlarged, and having been replaced in the line west of the Zonnebeke-Roeselaare road by French troops, I Corps moves its headquarters to Hooge [map, etc.], on the Ypres-Menin road. That evening Belgian engineers attempt to open the sluice gates at Nieuwpoort [maplink at 1st October], but are unsuccessful.

On 28th October French orders II Corps to retake Neuve Chapelle [maplink at 10th October], in order to straighten out the line of the Western Front in the La Bassée sector, and von Falkenhayn [19th October=>1915 (22nd April)] Orders Army Group Fabeck [see inset below] to prepare an attack on the south-eastern extent of the Ypres perimeter, from Mesen/Messines [maplink at 12th October], via Zandvoorde [map, etc.], to Gheluvelt [maplink at 12th October]. Their objective on the left is to take the Messines Ridge [map, etc.] and Wytschaete [maplink at 12th October]. Their objective in the centre and on the right is to break the B.E.F.'s remaining hold on the southern perimeter of the Salient.

**ASIDE - YPRES' SOFT UNDERBELLY:** We have already noted [<=19th October] that at the beginning of the First Battle of Ypres the perimeter of the Salient had a radius of some 12 miles. After 10 days fighting this radius has dropped in the south to only around 5 miles. Working round the reduced perimeter clockwise from east-south-east to south the line runs through or just in front of the following villages: Gheluvelt - Zandvoorde - Hollebeke - Messines. Behind them, and on only a three-mile radius from Ypres town square, are the following villages: Hooge - Zillebeke - St. Eloi - Wytschaete. Between 29th and 31st October the Fabeck Offensive will see the five-mile perimeter crushed by sheer weight of numbers, and pushed back half way toward the three-mile perimeter. All the five-mile villages are captured by the Germans, but all the three-mile villages remain British until the end of the war. Both Haig's and von Fabeck's forces are decimated [=>1st November (ASIDE) on what this entails] by the effort (including the three Welsh battalions present).

**ASIDE - ARMY GROUP FABECK:** Fabeck's independent command had been assembling over several days under von Fabeck [10th October=>14th November]. It consists of II (Royal Bavarian) Corps under Karl von Martini [Wikipedia biography], XV Corps under Berthold von Deimling [Wikipedia biography=>1915 (22nd April)], smaller attached units, and all the siege and heavy artillery available for miles around, "over two hundred and fifty heavy guns in all" (Edmonds, 1925, p259). Von Carlowitz's [21st October=>1915 (8th May)] XXVII Reserve Corps (already in sector) comes under Fabeck's orders and will give diversionary support on the right at Zonnebeke [maplink at 12th October]. That evening, at the second time of trying, Belgian engineers succeed in opening the sluice gates at Nieuwpoort [maplink at 1st October], thereby beginning the process of flooding the reclaimed marshland between the Yser and the aforementioned railway embankment []<=21st October]; turning said embankment, indeed, into the Allied front line for a few important miles.

**ASIDE:** Since Nieuwpoort was thereafter as good as impregnable this "inundation" shortened the Western Front, which, for the remainder of the war, now ran without break from Dixmuide [maplink at 16th October] to the Swiss border.

At 0530hr on 29th October XXVII Reserve Corps attacks at Gheluvelt ...
Overnight on 29th/30th October Fabeck secretly moves the five fresh divisions of his Army Group into their jumping-off positions at and between Messines and Gheluvelt. Facing them are (from south-west to north-east) De Lisle’s [10th October<=1915 (21st August)] 1st Cavalry Division in Messines itself, Gough’s [10th October<=1915 (25th September)] 2nd Cavalry Division along the line Wytschaete - Hollebeke, and Byng’s [21st October<=1915 (24th August)] 3rd Cavalry Division along the line Hollebeke - Zandvoorde, where the infantry of 7th Division takes over. The attacks begin at first light on 30th October ...

**CAMEO - 1/RWF AT ZANDVOORDE:** On the morning of 30th October the already-at-half-strength 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [21st October<=1st November] was one of several battalions lost in 7th Division’s [=1915 (25th September)] unsuccessful defence of Zandvoorde. Edmonds (1925) offers the following account ...

"Thus, towards 10 A.M. a number of troops were in motion towards Zandvoorde. But they were too late to save the [1/RWF], the troops next to the village on the north. They had already been for some three hours under heavy artillery fire, in trenches in the valley in full view of the enemy, and could only retire over an exposed slope [...]. Very shortly after the Germans had obtained possession of Zandvoorde ridge their infantry seized a farm to the right rear of the [1/RWF]. Thence they attacked it in flank, firing from a hedge only thirty yards away, and from the rear at a couple of hundred yards range [...]. At the same time, a battery firing from higher ground opened on the Welshmen with shrapnel, raking their trenches from end to end. As in other parts of the line, rifles began to jam, and ammunition to run short, and the battalion, fighting stoutly to the last, was, except for a few scattered parties, completely overwhelmed. It lost Lieut.-Colonel H[enry] Cadogan [No convenient biography] killed, 9 other officers, and 320 other ranks, of whom 4 officers and 50 men were taken prisoner. Only eighty-six survivors answered the roll call in the evening" (p288) [this sub-narrative continues in the Monthly Update at 1st November].

... and by nightfall on 30th October Fabeck's centre has pushed forward a mile and a half between Hollebeke and Zandvoorde. Messines, however, is holding out against his left, and Gheluvelt against his right. Their turn is now to come.

"Saturday the 31st October 1914 was to prove one of the most critical days in the history of the British Expeditionary Force, if not of the British Empire" (Edmonds, p303). At Gheluvelt, for example ...

**CAMEO - 1/SWB AND 2/WELCH AT GHELUVELT:** [... continued] During the morning of 31st October 2nd Bn Welch Regiment [29th October above=1st November below] is one of three battalions north of the Menin Road at Gheluvelt to be "blown out" of their positions during a concerted attack by XXVII Reserve Corps’ 54th Reserve Division [Wikipedia factsheet] and 30th Division [Wikipedia factsheet]. 1st Bn South Wales Borderers [earlier this entry=1st November] is forced by the same attack to retire into the grounds of Gheluvelt Chateau, a mile to the north of the village. This is how Edmonds (1925) will later summarise the engagement ...

"When, about 11.30 A.M., the Germans broke into Gheluvelt [...], the remaining portion of the Welch was overwhelmed. [Footnote p321: By 10 A.M. there were only 45 alive of the 130 men of [this] company, and only 16 rifles were firing. At 11.45 A.M. 37 survivors were captured.] About an hour later the two right companies of the Borderers, crushed by artillery, were forced back to the chateau grounds [...] But the remainder of the battalion [...] was sheltered to some extent by the copse in front, and continued to hold its original position [...]. Lieut.-Colonel [Henry E. B. Leach [Wikipedia biography]] of the Borderers immediately organised a counter-attack, and charged with the shattered remains of his two right companies, his battalion headquarters, and a few men of the Scots Guards. The Germans in the chateau grounds [...] were either bayonetted or shot at close quarters, or escaped, dropping arms and
equipment in their haste. [...] The British line up to the south-eastern edge of the grounds was thus restored" (pp320-321).

Another counter-attack takes place at 1300hr using the last of the available reinforcements, namely 2nd Bn Worcestershire Regiment [Wikipedia factsheet] under E. B. Hankey [Worcestershire Regiment biography]. This attack catches the Germans at rest after the morning's exertions "and in no expectation of such an onslaught" (ibid., p329), and succeeds in retaking "the greater part of the village" and re-establishing some sort of continuity with the 1/SWB in the chateau a mile to the north. As it happens Gheluvelt will be abandoned that night in favour of less exposed positions 600 yards further west, after which it will remain in German hands for the rest of the war.

The objectives on the German left on 31st October are more complex. At around 0430hr on 31st October Fabeck mounts a major attack toward Wytschaete and the Messines Ridge, hoping to break through towards Kemmel [maplink at 7th October] and thereby render the entire Salient untenable. Hand-to-hand fighting takes place on the approaches to Messines throughout the morning and by midday the British are forced back to the Armentières-Ypres main road [the modern N365] which runs north-south through the centre of the village. Here the arrival of reinforcements temporarily stabilises the situation. A mile further north, a similar fight is going on for the ridge east of Wytschaete. On this 3½ mile stretch of front Gough's 2nd Cavalry Division is under pressure from both 3rd (Royal Bavarian) Division [Wikipedia factsheet] and 6th (Bavarian) Reserve Division [Wikipedia factsheet] ...

********** EASY COME, EASY GO **********

CAMEO - THE LONDON SCOTTISH AT YPRES: Gough's defence of Wytschaete on 31st October is aided by the arrival of the first of the newly released territorial battalions, 1/14th (London Scottish) Bn London Regiment under George A. Malcolm [no convenient biography], and here, dropped into the thick of the fighting on its first day in action, said battalion promptly suffers 394 casualties out of its complement of 700.

Elsewhere on 31st October von Beseler's III Reserve Corps formally calls off its offensive on the Yser due to the rising waters of the inundation, and falls back to its jumping-off positions of ten days earlier, whilst further south Willcocks' I Indian Corps relieves II Corps on the La Bassée sector.

ASIDE: I Corps' and III Corps' need for reinforcements is by now so pressing that instead of being rested II Corps is in effect simply disbanded, with its survivors being re-assigned to where they are most needed.

The fighting on 1st November begins at midnight "in bright moonlight" (p349) with a sustained barrage against the line Messines - Wytschaete. This is then followed by an attack by 6th (Bavarian) Reserve Division, who outnumber Gough's defenders by "probably twelve to one" (p350), forcing them back across the aforementioned Armentières-Ypres road. "By 7.35 A.M. the Germans are in possession of the middle part of the Messines ridge, and its late occupants are re-forming at Hill 75 [coordinates]" (pp350-351, but in the present tense). Then, starting at around 0900hr De Lisle carries out a similar withdrawal from Messines ...

ASIDE: The 1st November withdrawal from the Messines Ridge will determine the basic profile of the Western Front immediately south of the Ypres Salient for the next three years (=>1917 (7th June)). On 2nd November the battles of Messines, Armentières, and La Bassée come, in the eyes of later official histories, to an end; the battles for Dixmuide and the Ypres Salient still have another few days to run, however.

... onto fall-back positions on the Wulverghem Ridge [coordinates].
On 2nd November the French 39th Division takes the line facing Messines, while the Germans continue to put pressure on Wytschaete. At Gheluvelt the 1st Bn Kings Royal Rifle Corps [Wikipedia factsheet] is decimated near the Menin Road. That evening rumours circulate to the effect that the Germans are beginning to transfer units to the Eastern Front following reverses in Poland [=17th October].

"During the next three days, the 3rd, 4th, and 5th November, there is little change in the situation" (Edmonds, p375, but in the present tense). On 3rd November Kitchener promises Sir John French the newly assembled 8th Division [Wikipedia factsheet] under [Sir] Franci J. Davies [Wikipedia biography] [=14th November], together with the next 11 territorial battalions. The same day Haig orders the British line to be strengthened with a network of "blockhouses", that is to say, "small strong points with all-round defence" (pp377-378).

6th November is "another critical day at Ypres" (p393), with a heavy attack on the French IX Corps resulting in a "deep wedge" being driven into the line toward Zillebeke [map, etc.], a mere two miles from Ypres town centre. The Germans capture Zwarteleen [map, etc.] and threaten St. Eloi [map, etc.]. A British counter-attack on 7th November stabilises the situation, although the "dent" remains.

On 10th November the focus of the action shifts to the northern sector of the Salient, At Dixmuide, for example, by now in effect an inland peninsular thanks to the inundation, a 12-hour artillery barrage followed by three-hour hand-to-hand infantry assault finally forces the Belgian and French defenders to abandon the town. The mainstay of the defence for the preceding month, Ronarc'h's [<=16th October] Fusiliers Marins, have suffered over 3000 casualties. Around the same time von Falkenhayn reports to Kaiser Wilhelm II [28th August<=>15th December] that the combination of combat losses and shortage of ammunition means that the German offensive in the west is over for the foreseeable future.

"THE NIGHT OF THE 10TH/11TH NOVEMBER PASSED QUIETLY ..."
*********** THE ATTACK OF THE "PRUSSIAN GUARD" ***********

On 11th November the Allies learn the hard way that Crown Prince Rupprecht [19th October<=>23rd November] is a wily adversary, for not only have his attacks south of the Salient caused the loss of Dixmuide to the north, but also he has managed to comb out enough fresh units to create a second independent Army Group ...


... to take the field alongside Fabeck in the south. This new and relatively fresh command has been quietly assembled in the Menin Road sector, leaving Fabeck to concentrate on the Messines-Wytschaete sector. As on 29th October XXVII Reserve Corps will give support on the right, this time by attacking Polygon Wood. The Linsingen attack opens at 0630hr with "the most terrific [artillery barrage] that the British had yet experienced" (p421), and is followed at 0900hr by the infantry attack itself.
CAMEO - 1/SWB AND 2/WELCH AT ZILLEBEKE: Over the last few days the survivors of 2nd Bn Welch Regiment [31st October above=>1st November] and 1st Bn South Wales Borderers [earlier this entry=>1st November] - both decimated in the Battle of Gheluvelt [earlier this entry] - have been combined with the survivors of three other battalions and a cavalry brigade (but still numbering only around 1000 men in all) under the command of Rudolf Lambart, 10th Earl of Cavan [Wikipedia biography]. On 11th November this scratched together force managed to hold out all day in front of Zillebeke against repeated attacks by the German 39th Division.

The Germans make no better progress on Cavan's left, where the elite 4th Division finds it difficult advancing through the debris of their own artillery barrage, and are "never dangerous" (p427). Only north of the Menin Road, where several Prussian Guards regiments are committed, is ground lost, the Germans penetrating to the western edge of Nonne Boschen [= the Nuns' Wood], halfway between Hooge and Polygon Wood. The situation here is saved by a mid-afternoon counter-attack by 2nd Bn Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry [Wikipedia factsheet] under Henry Rodolph Davies [Wikipedia biography] [continues at 14th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1 Aside: This quotation from Edmonds (1925, p419). Edmonds gives credit to Linsingen's troops for their professionalism in moving up into the attack without giving themselves away.

2 Aside: This quotation from Lomas (1998, p87). Lomas also points out that Britain did not actually formally declare war on Germany until 22nd November.

1914 [Tuesday 27th October] Computerised Naval Fire Control [XVII - Valuable Expertise Lost]: [Continued from 4th August] Prince Louis of Battenberg [1912 (8th December)=>1917 (14th July)] resigns as First Sea Lord (victim of the ongoing hate campaign directed at persons from families with strong German associations) and takes with him his deep understanding of the fire control problem (Pollen, 1980). [THREAD = WW1 CYBERNETIC, COMPUTATIONAL SCIENCE, AND FIRE CONTROL][THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Tuesday 27th October] The new British Super-Dreadnought HMS Audacious [1912 (14th September)=>sinks this day] hits a mine off County Donegal, Ireland, during gunnery practice and sinks 12 hours later [see the wreck]. [THREAD = WW1 SUBMARINE WARFARE]

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: As an attempted exercise in military disinformation the sinking was not publically acknowledged in Britain until mentioned in Parliament on 15th February 1916. It was, however, reported loudly, clearly, and with all the necessary names, in the American Press at the time. [THREAD = WW1 UNTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Tuesday 27th-29th October] The Goeben and the Breslau [II - The Bombardments of Odessa and the Crimea]: [Continued per se from 16th August; also relevant to Islam in WW1 at ??th October] In an attempt to bring the Ottoman Empire into the war against Russia an Ottoman naval taskforce under (the German) Wilhelm Souchon [Wikipedia biography] aboard the battlecruiser TCG Yavuz [16th August=>18th November] bombards the Imperial Russian [modern Ukrainian] port of Odessa, and on 29th October follows up with similar attacks on the ports of Sevastopol, Feodosia, and Novorossiysk on the Crimean Peninsula. The Russians respond by declaring war on the Ottomans on 1st December. The pro-German Turkish Minister of War, Ismail Enver Pasha [Wikipedia biography] prepares for an offensive against Russia in the Caucasus [continues at 18th November]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY ENGAGEMENTS]
1914 [Thursday 29th October] The British War Office finally approves plans to establish the **15th Bn (London Welsh) Royal Welch Fusiliers** [16th September<=1st November]. Munby (1920) adds the following detail: "... the Headquarters of the Battalion was at the Inns of Court Hotel, Holborn, and the Benchers of Gray's Inn lent the Gardens and Squares as drill grounds" (p2). [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Friday 30th October] **John A. ["Jacky"] Fisher, 1st Baron Fisher** [1907<=1915 (1st January)] is brought out of retirement (three months short of his 74th birthday) and made First Sea Lord. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1914 [Saturday 31st October] **Colonel and the Falklands [XI - Sightings Reported]**: [Continued from 27th October] Presently scouting ahead of Cradock's [27th October<=1st November] Squadron the light cruiser **HMS Glasgow** [10th September<=1st November] intercepts wireless signals from **SMS Leipzig** [12th October<=1st November] Of sufficient strength to indicate that she is not far away [sub-thread continues at 1st November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY ENGAGEMENTS]

1914 [Saturday 31st October-7th November] **Action in the Pacific [IX - The Assault on Tsingtao]**: [Continued from 11th September] Having spent eight weeks closing with the German fortifications at Tsingtao, the siege commander Kamao [=2nd September] now orders the bombardment and the approach sapping to start, and the city is then successfully stormed during the night 6th/7th November and its wireless station destroyed.

**CAMEO - 2/SWB AT TSINGTAO:** Total casualties for the **2nd Bn South Wales Borderers** [2nd September<=1st November] were 14 killed or died of wounds/disease and 36 wounded.

With its bases now in Allied hands and its Asia Squadron on its way toward the South Atlantic the German war effort in the Pacific henceforth rests with its commerce raiders [sub-thread continues at 9th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 31st October] The **Queen Elizabeth** class Super-Dreadnought **HMS Barham** [Wikipedia shipography=>1916 (31st May)] is launched at John Brown and Company [=1913 (21st April)], Clydebank. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

******************* MONTHLY UPDATE, OCTOBER 1914 *******************

******************** MONTHLY UPDATE, OCTOBER 1914 ********************

******************** MONTHLY UPDATE, OCTOBER 1914 ********************

Note: Those battalions earmarked for 53rd [Territorial] (Welsh) Division are identified thus [53rd (from 5th August)]; those battalions subsequently brought together to serve in 38th (Welsh) Division are identified thus [38th (from 29th November 1915)]

1914 [Sunday 1st November] **Present Location of Welsh Units:** **Quite a lot has changed during October.** Here is the status of the British Army's essentially Welsh units at the end of the third month of the war ...

**ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS** (the ancestral 23rd Regiment of Foot [=1881 (1st July)])

1st Bn, having been in France for under a month as part of 7th Division, has **just been decimated** at Zandvoorde [=27th October (CAMEO)]. 2nd Bn [=1913 (29th October)] having been in France since mid-August is now part of 6th Division [12th October<=1st December].

**ASIDE:** There are some useful names, dates, and numbers concerning 1/RWF's activities during October 1914 on the Great War Forum website [at http://1914-1918.invisionzone.com/forums/index.php?showtopic=184197].
ASIDE - THE VARIOUS MEANINGS OF "DECIMATED": In modern English usage there are two subtly different meanings of the verb "to decimate". The first (and most pedantically correct) usage comes straight from the Roman Army's disciplinary practice of decimatio (from decimare, to take a tenth), that is to say, the punishing/executing of every tenth man in a unit following dishonourable action of some sort. The second (looser, but more common and too widespread to correct) is as an everyday term signifying "only a few survivors, and of little further combat effectiveness". It follows that every time one reads the word "decimated" it is necessary to ask oneself whether 90% of the unit is left, or only 10%, or somewhere in between. With 1/RWF the survivor percentages were very low. Moreover, since the B.E.F. as a whole presently has 75 out of its 84 battalions at below one-third strength it is fair to describe the British Army as having been decimated. Worse still, the recorded losses included not just pre-war regular army personnel but also the first wave of reinforcement drafts, meaning that precious few physically prime and properly experienced replacements remained to be had. And worse, even, than that, we have not yet started to factor in the effects of post-traumatic stress on those still standing [a new sub-thread on Shellshock starts at 4th December].

The reserve battalion, the eight territorial battalions, and the first two service battalions remain as previously listed [<=1st October]. No further territorial battalions were mobilised during October. Five more service battalions were created during October but are not yet operationally assigned. These are 10th [(Service)] Bn, 11th [(Service)] Bn, and 12th (Reserve) Bn, all at Wrexham, 13th [(Service)] Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Rhyll, and 15th [(Service)] (London Welsh) Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] [29th October<=]1915 (24th December)] in the City of London.

SOUTH WALES BORDERERS (the ancestral 24th Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn, having been in France since mid-August as part of 1st Division, has just been decimated at Gheluvelt [<=29th October]. 2nd Bn [31st October<=]1st December] is presently actively supporting the Japanese siege at Tsingtao. The reserve battalion, the two territorial battalions, and the first five service battalions remain as previously listed [<=1st October]. No further territorial battalions were mobilised during October. Two more service battalions were created during October but are not yet operationally assigned. These are 9th [(Service)] (Reserve) Bn at Pembroke Dock and 10th [(Service)] (1st Gwent) Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

THE WELCH REGIMENT (the ancestral 41st and 69th Regiments of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is still in India. 2nd Bn, having been in France since mid-August as part of 1st Division, has just been decimated at Gheluvelt [<=29th October]. 3rd (Reserve) Bn is still active in Cardiff and Barry. A new 2-series territorial battalion, 2/4th [(Territorial)] Bn, has been created at Carmarthan. Four more service battalions have been created, namely 12th [(Service)] Bn and 13th [(Service)] (2nd Rhondda) Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Cardiff, 14th [(Service)] (Swansea) Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Swansea, and 15th [(Service)] (Carmarthenshire) Bn[38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Carmarthan.

THE (TERRITORIAL) WELSH ARMY
Now that four out of the six pre-war Welsh regular army battalions have ceased to exist, the battalions of the Territorial Force suddenly start to be taken seriously as potential replacements, and the best-trained of them start to be prepared for service overseas. The Monmouthshire Regiment (below) is near the top of that list.

I - INFANTRY
The following territorial infantry regiments in Wales (sometimes also in the border counties of England) are mobilising in their respective garrison town(s) ...

THE CHESHIRE REGIMENT
The 2nd Bn Cheshire Regiment has mobilised the third of its four affiliated territorial battalions, namely 2/7th [(Territorial)] Bn at Macclesfield.

THE HEREFORDSHIRE REGIMENT
No change during October 1914 [<=1st September].

THE MONMOUTHSHIRE REGIMENT
No change during October 1914 [=1st September]. 1/2nd Bn [1st October<=1st December] will land in France on 7th November, and will be attached to 4th Division.

Those units already assigned to 53rd (Welsh) Division remain in training at Northampton.

II - MOUNTED

The four 1-series Welsh territorial mounted units [=1st September] remain encamped at Thetford, Norfolk, assigned to the South Wales Mounted Brigade of the 1st Mounted Division. The four 2-series units [<=1st October] and the two battalions of the Welsh Horse Yeomanry continue their training.

THE (REGULAR) "WELSH ARMY"

No change during October 1914 [=1st October].

***************** END OF MONTHLY UPDATE, OCTOBER 1914 *****************

1914 [Sunday 1st November] Counter-Battery Science [I - 1914 Style]: [New sub-thread; but draws on technology last mentioned in Cardiography at 1911 (15th September)] The Royal Engineers set up a specialist "Ranging Section" under Harold Winterbotham [no convenient biography] to develop the necessary techniques and skills for calculating the map coordinates of enemy artillery from the available physical observations (direction of flash, delay of report, etc.), so that at least an approximation to counter-battery fire could be attempted. The French Army, meanwhile, has for some time been experimenting with a number of sound- and light-ranging techniques, including (transported from the Cardiography laboratory) the Bull-Weiss String Galvanometer [<=1911 (15th September)] [sub-thread continues at 1915 (15th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 ARTILLERY]

1914 [1st November] WW1 in the Caucasus [I - The Initial Moves (The Bergmann Offensive)]: [New sub-thread] On 1st November 1914 (the day before the official declaration of war), Tsarist units commanded by General Georgy Bergmann [Wikipedia biography] move southward across the border into Ottoman territory. The border here runs roughly east-to-west, and the Tsarists follow two axes of advance, headquartered respectively on the right in the Georgian city of Tbilisi [map] and on the left in the Armenian city of Yerevan [map]. The objective on the right is Köprüköy in Eastern Anatolia [map], and on the left it is Dogubeyazit [map]. The advancing Russians are generally made welcome by the local ethnic Armenians, who see themselves as an oppressed minority within the Ottoman Empire ...

ASIDE - ARMENIA BEFORE THE GENOCIDES: Centred on Yerevan, modern Armenia is clearly delineated on the above maps, but is smaller than the ethnic Armenia [Wikipedia briefing] of 1914. From the beginning of the 19th Century, ethnic Armenia was continually being occupied by Tsarist Russia from the north, by the Ottoman Empire from the south-west, and by the Persians from the south-east, rendering them - like so many other regional minorities - just another pawn in the famous "Great Game" [Wikipedia briefing]. Russia, for example, constantly reminded them that they were a Christian Orthodox people who should look to the Tsar for protection from both their Muslim neighbours to the south. Unsurprisingly, the region is still politically unsettled at time of writing [= January 2021], as western agencies foment anti-Moscow sentiments.

On 5th November 1914 Tsar Nicholas II visits the front to encourage his troops, and is assured by the President of the Armenian National Bureau that "From all countries Armenians are hurrying to enter the ranks for the glorious Russian Army, with their blood to serve the victory of Russian arms" (Wik. cit.) [sub-thread continues at 15th December 1914]
********** "BY THE GRACE OF GOD A FINE VICTORY"**********

1914 [Sunday 1st November] Coronel and the Falklands [XII - The Battle of Coronel]: [Continued from 31st October] This battle is fought off the coast of Chile between Cradock's 31st October<dies this day><=2nd November> Squadron and von Spee's 5th October<=>3rd November> Asia Squadron. Cradock's force comprises the ageing armoured cruisers HMS Good Hope 27th October<sinks this day> and HMS Monmouth 10th September<sinks this day>, along with the armed merchant cruiser HMS Otranto 10th September and the light cruiser HMS Glasgow 31st October<=>2nd November. HMS Canopus 27th October<=>2nd November, is still 300 miles to the south. Von Spee's squadron comprises the modern armoured cruisers SMS Scharnhorst 5th October<=>8th December and SMS Gneisenau [ditto], and the light cruisers SMS Dresden 12th October<=>8th December, SMS Leipzig 31st October<=>7th December, and SMS Nürnberg 5th August<=>8th December. The day begins at 0250hr when a German supply ship reports Glasgow's at anchor at Valparaiso, causing him to fan his ships out across her possible exit routes. Then at 1620hr Glasgow - now back on patrol - sights von Spee's smoke and by 1640hr Luce 18th October<=>8th December> has formally identified Scharnhorst, Gneisenau, and Leipzig in close formation, with Dresden and Nürnberg looser on the starboard quarter. Luce immediately sends a wireless signal to Cradock, who - fatefully - turns to engage the enemy rather than trying to escape into the approaching night. The two squadrons now find themselves heading southward on slightly converging courses. Tactically, in fact, this is nothing short of a disaster for the British ships because it leaves them silhouetted against the setting sun whilst the German ships are already so dimly visible that Cradock's rangefinders cannot focus on them. Moreover von Spee's sixteen turreted 21cm [=8.3"] guns outrange Cradock's casemated 6" guns, forcing him to press ever closer. Hits start to accumulate on Good Hope and Monmouth and by 2128hr both the heavies have sunk 3 and Luce is scattering with the lights. The battle is noteworthy in the present context for demonstrating (a) the quality of German gunnery, and (b) the perils of imprecise communication [continues at 2nd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1ASIDE: This phrase from a signal from von Spee to his squadron after the event.

2ASIDE: The Scharnhorst scored 35 hits on Good Hope out of 422 shells fired. Good Hope hit Scharnhorst twice, but neither shell exploded.

3ASIDE: No survivors from either Good Hope or Monmouth. Four Royal Canadian Navy midshipmen were on Good Hope and were Canada's first combat losses in the war. Their memorial is at the Coronel Memorial Library, Royal Roads University, Victoria, BC [check out https://student.myrru.royalroads.ca/crossroads-news/battle-coronel-commemoration]. For a modern remembering of Stoker 1st Class Edward Parry, one of Monmouth's 738 dead, click here. Bennett (1962) assesses Good Hope's suitability for the campaign as follows ...

"Completed in 1902 with a designed speed of 23 knots, she was a well-protected vessel, displacing 14,100 tons, albeit under-gunned for the great size of her hull: she was armed with two 9.2-in. and sixteen 6-in. guns. On paper she might be only half-way through her useful life; in fact she was as obsolete as a pre-dreadnought battleship" (pp16-17).

4ASIDE: The blame game now begins, with the clarity of the signals exchanged between Cradock and the Admiralty coming in for especially scrutiny. One school of thought blames Cradock for splitting his squadron, whilst another blames the Admiralty (a) for under-estimating that squadron at the outset, and (b) for not reinforcing it once it became clear that von Spee was heading eastward. We shall be returning to these issues on 11th November and 1st December.
1914 [Monday 2nd-5th November] The East African Campaign [IV - The Battles of Tanga and First Longido]: This combined operations battle is fought for control of German East Africa [roughly modern Rwanda, Burundi, and Tanzania] between "Force B", an 8000-man invading British/Indian expeditionary force under Arthur E. Aitken [Wikipedia biography=>17th November], and a considerably smaller force of Germans and Askaris¹ under von Lettow-Vorbeck [15th August=>17th November]. The British try to land at the port of Tanga [map, etc.] but the German defences are so effective that the outcome is an embarrassing British withdrawal. On 3rd November a second British column, "Force C", a 4000-man brigade commanded by James M. Stewart [no convenient biography], invades overland from British East Africa [= roughly modern Kenya] to the north and attempts to capture the township of Longido [map, etc.], but here too the Germans drive them off. There follows a long cat-and-mouse guerrilla campaign in which the Germans and the Askaris - to the echoes of their very own marching song "Heia, Heia Safari" [surprisingly catchy - hear it now] - run rings around their pursuers². Von Lettow-Vorbeck will publish his memoirs after the war as "Heia Safari" [1920/2013 Amazon] [sub-thread continues at 17th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

¹ASIDE: The word Askari does not refer to a distinct tribal grouping, but indicates merely a German-trained native African auxiliary.

²ASIDE: Although there is a suspicion that the German propaganda system bigged up von Lettow-Vorbeck's exploits during the war, and that he himself made as much as he could of them in his subsequent memoirs, the basic facts of his campaign are highly impressive. It was a campaign in which frontiersmen and field-craft were pitted against regular army men and rule books. We have already introduced the British Empire's Legion of Frontiersmen [4th October=>5th November] and will continue to report their achievements as they happen.

ASIDE - HOW REPORTED AT THE TIME AND SUBSEQUENTLY: These events were not, it seemed, reported at the time, prompting Lord Curzon [<=1907 (2nd November)] to complain as follows to the House of Lords on 18th November ...

"...although military operations have been proceeding, scarcely a word - I think I may say not one word - of information has been vouchsafed to the British public. It was only by accident that I myself was aware that a considerable number of Indian troops were operating in that part of the world: and the nature of the fighting, which must have been severe, was really brought home to the British public for the first time only a few days ago by the publication in the newspapers of any extensive list of casualties" (Hansard, 18:85-92).

Curzon's complaint clearly fell on deaf ears, for the first relatively complete account of the East African Campaign will not be placed before Parliament until the following Spring [=1915 (20th April)]. [THREAD = WW1 UTRUTHS, HALF-TRUTHS, AND SUBTERFUGES]

1914 [Monday 2nd November] Coronel and the Falklands [XIII - Canopus Turns Back]: [Continued from 1st November] HMS Canopus [1st November=>11th November], having only just reached the Vallenar Roads anchorage, is told of Cradock's [1st November=>11th November] defeat by wireless signal from HMS Glasgow [1st November=>3rd November] and turns southward to begin the 10-day voyage back to the Falkland Islands [sub-thread continues at 3rd November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Tuesday 3rd November-2nd December] Coronel and the Falklands [XIV - Von Spee Bides His Time]: [Continued from 2nd November] Von Spee [1st November=>next entry] now refuels in Valparaiso and in a lengthy exchange of signals with Berlin is told "to break through for home" (Bennett, 1962, p116).
ASIDE: British consular staff in Valparaiso soon hear talk of a famous British defeat and duly telegraph the bad news to London. It will be confirmed by a signal from HMS Glasgow [2nd November<=7th December] on 6th November.

Strangely, however, von Spee is no great hurry to run the Royal Navy's gauntlet, breaking his trip southward with long extra stops at Más Afuera [map link at 26th October] between 5th and 15th November and at St. Quentin’s Bay [coordinates: minus46.8,minus74.5] between 21st and 26th November. On 18th November he receives further instructions from Berlin promising a diversionary operation by the High Seas Fleet should one be requested. In the end it is not until 2nd December that the squadron rounds Cape Horn and enters the South Atlantic [sub-thread continues at 11th November; but note also the next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1 ASIDE: Berlin had perhaps told him to await a land victory in the First Battle of Ypres. Readers unfamiliar with the phrase and concept of running the gauntlet should see the Wikipedia factsheet on the subject.

********** GERMAN HVB CODEBOOK BROKEN **********
********** GERMAN HVB CODEBOOK BROKEN **********
********** GERMAN HVB CODEBOOK BROKEN **********

1914 [Tuesday 3rd November] The SS Hobart Affair [II - The HVB Code is Broken]: [Continued from 11th August] An Australian Naval Instructor named Frederick W. Wheatley [no convenient biography] succeeds in breaking the German HVB signal system. Naval Intelligence in London immediately sends him copies of intercepts from the Valparaiso area. Wheatley's decrypts indicate that von Spee [preceding entry<=12th November] intends leading his squadron back around Cape Horn into the South Atlantic. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS] [THREAD = WW1 ESPIONAGE AND INTELLIGENCE]

1914 [Tuesday 3rd November] The North Sea Campaign [II - The Raid on Great Yarmouth]: A marauding German battlecruiser/cruiser squadron under von Hipper [28th August<=15th December] mounts a surprise dawn raid on the port and town of Great Yarmouth [map, etc.], laying a number of mines and dropping a number of shells off target on the beach before setting off home. A British submarine is sunk by one of the mines while attempting to give pursuit, and the German heavy cruiser SMS Yorck [Wikipedia shipography=>sinks this day] is sunk on the approaches to Wilhelmshaven when a navigational error diverts her into one of her own minefields [sub-thread continues at 15th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Wednesday 4th November] The Queen Elizabeth class Super-Dreadnought HMS Valiant [Wikipedia shipography=>1916 (31st May)] is launched at Fairfield Shipbuilding and Engineering Company [<=1911 (1st July)], Govan. [THREAD = THE WW1 SURFACE NAVIES]

1910 [Wednesday 4th November] Islam in WW1 [III - The Conventional Wisdom]: [Continued from 5th October] Joseph M. Staniforth’s [5th October<=23rd November] latest editorial cartoon is entitled "The Two Loves" [see it now] and shows Turkey as torn between joining the Central Powers or remaining neutral. [sub-thread continues at 5th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 EDITORIAL COMMENT AND NATIONAL OPINION]

1910 [Wednesday 4th November] SMS Karlsruhe [10th September<=sinks this day] sinks en route to Barbados following an accidental explosion. The German Admiralty have the presence of mind to keep the loss out of the newspapers so that the Royal Navy will not reallocate the assets presently trying to track her down; she is lost but continues to serve, so to speak. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

********** TURKEY JOINS THE WAR **********
1914 [Thursday 5th/11th November] Islam in WW1 [IV - Turkey Joins the Central Powers]: [Continued from 4th November] On 5th November Britain and France declare war on Turkey. The British immediately issue the final approval for the already-resourced seaborne invasion of Mesopotamia (= modern Iraq; =>next entry). On 11th November Mehmed V replies by declaring *Jihad* (= “Holy War”) against the Allies and thereafter aligning his country’s military operations with those of the Central Powers [sub-thread continues at 15th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 TREATIES AND ALLIANCES]

1914 [Friday 6th-8th November] The Mesopotamian Campaign [I - The Fao Landing]: [New sub-thread, out of Islam in WW1 - see preceding entry] This battle is fought to establish a British/Indian bridgehead at the top of the Persian Gulf. The assault force is commanded by Walter S. Delamain [no convenient biography]. The outcome is a successful British landing [sub-thread continues at 11th November ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 7th November] Grossetti [21st October<=1916 (12th September)] is promoted to command XVI Corps. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Saturday 7th November] The Canadian War Office approves the establishment of 49th (Edmonton) Battalion [Wikipedia factsheet=>1915 (3rd June)] at Edmonton, Alberta. The recruiting stations draw heavily on members of the Legion of Frontiersmen [2nd November<=1915 (12th February)]. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

***** CHURCHILL PLAYS FOR TIME *****

1914 [Monday 9th November] Winston Churchill makes a speech at the Guildhall, London, in which he reassures his audience that naval blockades take several months to bite to full effect, but that Germany was doomed “as surely as the approaching winter strikes the leaves from the trees”. Nevertheless, the Royal Navy’s blockade was seriously leaky thanks to a lot of cynical blockade-running and profiteering by British businessmen, and in fact it would take two more years for it to bite.

ASIDE: In fact *Emden* actually scored the first hit but *Sydney* then backed off to restore her reach advantage.
member, the Postmaster-General Herbert Samuel [1913 (1st July) => 1915 (28th January)], himself a Jew, has been promoting ever since both men were involved in the so-called Uganda Scheme a decade earlier [<=1902 (13th November), et seq.][sub-thread continues at 1915 (28th January) ...]. [THREAD WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES] [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Wednesday 11th November-6th December] The Eastern Campaign [VI - The Battle of Lodz]: [Continued from 17th October] This battle is fought in Poland between the German Ninth Army under von Mackenson [17th October <= 1915 (31st January)], under the strategic direction of von Hindenburg [28th September <= 1915 (7th February)] and the Russian 1st, 2nd, and 5th Armies under the overall command of Ruzsky [28th September <= 1915 (7th February)]. The Germans are trying to push forward and take Warsaw [map, etc.] but rapid manoeuvering by the Russians nearly results in the entire Ninth Army being encircled. Only a hasty German fighting withdrawal saves them. The outcome is inconclusive but expensive in terms of casualties [sub-thread continues at 1st December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 11th-21st November] The Mesopotamian Campaign [II - The Battle of Basra]: [Continued from 6th November] This battle is fought for control of the city of Basra [map, etc.], 70 miles up the Tigris river from Fao, and therefore well placed to protect the British oil installations at Abadan [<=22nd May]. The outcome is a British victory [sub-thread continues at 3rd December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

********** ADMIRALTY BLAMED FOR CORONEL DEFEAT **********

1914 [Wednesday 11th November] Coronel and the Falklands [XV - Vengeance Sought]: [Continued from 3rd November] With the basic facts of Cradock's [2nd November => 1st December] defeat at Coronel already common knowledge in the homes of the bereaved, and with the British Press clamouring for explanations, the matter is raised in the House of Lords by the Liberal Party peer William Waldegrave Palmer, 2nd Earl of Selborne [Wikipedia biography], as follows ...

"Next, my Lords, I wish to allude to our recent defeat in the Pacific. [...] According to the information at my disposal, the German squadron consisted of three excellent third-class cruisers of the "Emden" class [...] combined with the "Scharnhorst" and "Gneisenau," two very powerful first-class cruisers. All those five ships are fast ships. Now, what was the squadron collected to meet those ships? The "Glasgow," a better ship than the "Emden" class; the "Monmouth" and the "Good Hope," two good ships of their date, but of a type not to be compared for a single moment with the "Scharnhorst" and the "Gneisenau." The inferiority of those three ships to the German combination was so manifest that we were told by the Admiralty that they had joined to that squadron the battleship [HMS Canopus [2nd November => 12th November]] [...] The point is this. If you add the "Canopus" to the "Monmouth" and the "Good Hope" and the "Glasgow," most surely you have a squadron more 39 powerful than the German squadron it was intended to meet; yet also you have a squadron which under no possible circumstances could force the German squadron to action, because the "Canopus" is slow. All the cruisers on both sides concerned are over 20-knot cruisers—I think, running up to 22 and 23 knots. I do not suppose the "Canopus" at the most can steam more than 17-knots. [...] Consequently for the purpose of catching and defeating the German squadron the addition of the "Canopus" to the cruisers we have lost was obviously futile. I confess that the explanation about the "Canopus" only filled me with astonishment, and with a greater desire for an explanation from the Government as to how this could ever have come to pass" (Hansard, 18:37-40, heavily abridged; bold emphasis added).

But the Admiralty has already learned the lesson about needing fast ships to catch fast ships, and has already ordered the release from the Grand Fleet of the battlecruisers HMS Invincible [1906 (2nd April) => 1915 (28th December)] and HMS Inflexible [1907 (26th June) => 1915 (28th December)], both faster and better armed than their prey. Command of this taskforce, which sails today, has been given to [Sir] Frederick C. Doveton Sturdee [Wikipedia]
1914 [Thursday 12th November] **Coronel and the Falklands [XVI - Canopus Arrives at Port Stanley]**: [Continued from 11th November] Having dashed back from the Vallenar Roads [<=2nd November] with visions of von Spee [3rd November<=2nd December] hot on his tail¹, HMS Canopus [11th November<=8th December] makes it back to the Falkland Islands, where, over the coming days, she is moored/grounded² over mudflats in the approaches to Port Stanley as an unsinkable guardship. Her gunnery team goes ashore to set up a fire control position on top of the nearby heights [sub-thread continues at 1st December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

¹**ASIDE**: Canopus need not have worried, for, it will be remembered, von Spee is presently biding his time at Más Afuera [maplink at 26th October].

²**ASIDE**: She moves up and down onto the seabed by cleverly combining the effects of the tides with the flooding/pumping out of her double bottom.

***** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES OFFICIALLY ENDS *****
***** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES OFFICIALLY ENDS *****
***** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES OFFICIALLY ENDS *****
***** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES OFFICIALLY ENDS *****
***** THE FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES OFFICIALLY ENDS *****

1914 [Saturday 14th-22nd November] **The First Battle of Ypres [VII FINAL - Summary Comment]**: [Continued from 27th October] After the failure of the Linsingen attacks [<=27th October (11th November)], the weather deteriorates and there is a slow but steady flow of Allied reinforcements. These include French units from other sectors, and Davies¹ [<=27th October] 8th Division and the Territorial Force battalions from Britain.

**ASIDE**: When it comes to the fighting qualities of the British reinforcements not everyone is equally complimentary, thus ...

"Though a fair number of reinforcements were arriving, they were reported by some units to be practically untrained, by others to have neither the will nor physique to fight. No young recruits were sent, and many of the men were the dregs of the depots, 'old worn drunken wasters', says one report. They did not add to the fighting strength and were merely a source of anxiety" (Edmonds, 1925, p449).

Then, on 17th November, the Germans are ordered to cease their attacks and to dig in where they stand. The following day entire corps start to be withdrawn en route for the Eastern Front, where they are needed in the ongoing Battle of Lodz [<=11th November]. Von Beseler’s [<=6th October] and von Fabek’s [<=27th October] formations are amongst the first to catch an east-bound train.

"**ON 22 NOVEMBER THE BRITISH ARMY HAD A QUIET DAY**"²

Here is Edmonds (1925) again ...

"During the 15th November and following days the relief of the I Corps and the reorganisation of the British line took place. The Expeditionary Force evacuated the Ypres area and was reassembled on the front between the La Bassée Canal and Kemmel [maplink at 7th October], so that its two wings were no longer separated. [...] Thus by the 22nd the British held a compact front from the La Bassée Canal at [Givenchy-lès-la-Bassée [maplink at 10th October]] to opposite Wyttschaete [maplink at 12th October]" (pp458-459).

The Medical Officer of 2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [1st November<=1st December] notes as follows ...

---

¹ASIDE: Canopus need not have worried, for, it will be remembered, von Spee is presently biding his time at Más Afuera [maplink at 26th October].

²ASIDE: She moves up and down onto the seabed by cleverly combining the effects of the tides with the flooding/pumping out of her double bottom.
"At the end of 'The Race for the Sea' the Germans held the advantage of ground all along the line, not only as a tactical position but as habitable ground. Both sides were physically exhausted, and they had scarcely a shot left in their artillery limbers. For a few months there was fairly general quiet while they recuperated, made up their depleted supplies, and laboured to make trenches habitable" (Dunn, 1938, p94).

At a national level, it had been, von Moltke [<=14th September] will confess to Kaiser Wilhelm II [27th October<=15th December] on 17th January 1915 [full text online], a "schweren Misserfolg" [= a heavy defeat/failure/setback]\(^1\), and for the armies it had been a veritable slaughterhouse ...

"In the British battalions which fought at the Marne and Ypres, there scarcely remained with the colours an average of one officer and thirty men of those who landed in August 1914. The old British Army was gone past recall, leaving but a remnant to carry on the training of the New Armies" (p465).

---

1\(^{\text{ASIDE:}}\) Edmonds translates this as "utter failure to be successful" (1925, p447n), but we think that heavy is a safer adjective than utter.

1914 [Saturday 14th November] The British Medical Journal [2(2811)] includes a letter from a serving surgeon summarising what would nowadays be called a "care pathway" for the treatment of gunshot wounds. Treatment begins in the field with the application of the "First Field Dressing"\(^1\) (actually no more than a large absorbent pad), then continues at the Casualty Clearing Station, then again - if necessary - at the Base Hospital. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1\(^{\text{ASIDE:}}\) David Jones (Royal Welch Fusiliers) [1902<=1915 (7th April [ASIDE])] will later recall the practical difficulties involved in applying the First Field Dressing when the man next to him is shot in the "middle body" during the Battle of Mametz Wood [=1916 (11th July)], thus ...

"... and how could you stay so fast a tide, it would be difficult with him screaming whenever you move him ever so little, let alone try with jack-knife to cut clear the hampering cloth. The First Field Dressing is futile as frantic seaman's shift bunged to stoved bulwark, so soon the darking flood perc[olates and he dies in your arms" (In Parenthesis, 1937, p174).

********** THE CALIPH CALLS FOR MUTINY **********

********** THE CALIPH CALLS FOR MUTINY **********

********** THE CALIPH CALLS FOR MUTINY **********

1914 [Saturday 14th-15th November] Islam in WW1 [V - A Call to the Faithful]: [Continued from 5th November] Mehmeh V [5th November<=1915 (17th April)] calls upon all Muslim troops in the Allied armies - of whom there are many tens of thousands - to remember their religious duty and to mutiny forthwith [sub-thread continues at 2nd December ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Monday 16th November] D'Urbal [21st October<=1915 (2nd April)] is put in command of the French Eighth Army. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Monday 16th November-16th December] The Serbian Campaign [III - The Battle of Kolubara]: [Continued from 6th September] This battle is fought for control of the Kolubara Valley [map, etc.] and the city of Belgrade between an advancing Austro-Hungarian army under Oskar Potiorek [<=6th September] and a Serbian army under Radomir Putnik [Wikipedia biography]. The Austro-Hungarians succeed in their early advances, entering Belgrade on 2nd December. The Serbs then counterattack and by 16th December have
forced the Austro-Hungarians to abandon all their gains. The battle will cost them some 30,000 killed and 70,000 captured and will expose the entire Habsburg military establishment as seriously out of touch [continues at 7th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Tuesday 17th November] The East African Campaign [V - The Second Battle of Longido]: [Continued from 2nd November] This relatively insignificant battle is fought at Longido (<=2nd November), German East Africa, between elements of Aitken’s (<=2nd November<=>1915 (18th January) invasion force and von Lettow-Vorbeck’s (<=2nd November<=>1915 (12th January)) German/Askari resistance fighters. The outcome on this occasion is a German withdrawal into the bush, where they regroup to attack elsewhere [sub-thread continues at 1915 (18th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Wednesday 18th November] The Goeben and the Breslau [III - The Battle of Cape Sarych]: [Continued from 27th October] This battle is fought in Crimean [then Imperial Russian - Ed.] waters off Cape Sarych [map, etc.] between the Russian Black Sea Fleet under Andrei Eberhardt [Wikipedia biography] and Souchon’s (<=27th October) TCG Yavuz (<=27th October) and TCG Midilli (<=16th August). Both sides suffer minor damage before breaking off the action in poor visibility [end of sub-thread, although the ships will re-appear during the Gallipoli Campaign at 1915 (25th April) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS][THREAD = WW1 GRAND STRATEGIES]

1914 [Friday 20th November] Irish Home Rule [XXXII - Germany Backs the Irish Nationals]: [Continued from 25th October] During his fund-raising activities in New York City Casement [25th October<=4th December] came to the attention of the German Embassy, who - aware of the ongoing charm offensive aimed at the Muslim, Hindu, and Irish Catholic communities [<=??th October] - duly arranged to have him conveyed to Berlin for secret talks. Following these meetings the German government now issues a pledge to sponsor and support Irish Home Rule, as follows ...

"The Imperial Government formally declares that under no circumstances would Germany invade Ireland with a view to its conquest or the overthrow of any native institutions in that country. Should the fortune of this Great War [...] ever bring in its course German troops to the shores of Ireland, they would land there not as an army of invaders to pillage and destroy but as the forces of a Government that is inspired by goodwill towards a country and people for whom Germany desires only national prosperity and national freedom."

[Sub-thread continues at 4th December ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Monday 23rd November] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXV - The Welsh Buttered Up]: [Continued from 5th October] Wales' leading editorial cartoonist Joseph M. Staniforth [4th November<=15th December (ASIDE)] publishes a cartoon entitled "The Men Who Stick It" [see it now] in which - alluding to events on the Beaulne Spur on 13th September (=q.v.) - a caricatured Sir John French [27th October<=1915 (24th March)] is shown asking for "more men - and especially Welshmen" [sub-thread continues at 1st December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 EDITORIAL COMMENT AND NATIONAL OPINION]

1914 [Monday 23rd-24th November] The 'Defence' of Festubert: This comparatively localised action takes place at Festubert [maplink at 10th October] on the now generally quiet La Bassée front (=<=27th October) between local elements of Crown Prince Rupprecht's [27th October<=17th December] Sixth (Bavarian) Army and local elements of Anderson's [10th October<=1915 (10th March)] 7th (Meerut) Division. The battle begins with the Indians being pushed back and ends with an overnight counter-attack which more or less restores the status quo ante. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]
This Act of the British Parliament [full text online] extends and clarifies the provisions of the [No. 2] Act [=28th August], [THREAD = LEGALITIES AND THE WAR]

Note: Those battalions earmarked for 53rd [Territorial] (Welsh) Division are identified thus [53rd (from 5th August)]; those battalions subsequently brought together to serve in 38th (Welsh) Division are identified thus [38th (from 29th November 1915)].

Present Location of Welsh Units: Not a lot has changed during November. Here is the status of the British Army's essentially Welsh units at the end of the fourth month of the war ...

ROYAL WELCH FUSILERS (the ancestral 23rd Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
The decimated 1st Bn [=1st November] is still being rebuilt using the survivors as a cadre for drafts of replacements. 2nd Bn [38th (from 29th November 1915)] has been in France since mid-August remains part of 6th Division [1st November <=2015 (1st January)]. The reserve battalion, the eight territorial battalions, and the first seven service battalions remain as previously listed [last substantive comment <=1st November]. No further territorial battalions were mobilised during November. Two more service battalions were created during November but are not yet operationally assigned. These are 14th [(Service)] Bn [38th (from 29th November 1915)] and 16th [(Service)] Bn [38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Llandudno.

SOUTH WALES BORDERERS (the ancestral 24th Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
The decimated 1st Bn [=1st November] is presently being rebuilt using the survivors as a cadre for drafts of replacements. 2nd Bn [1st November <=4th December] is about to return from the Far East. The reserve battalion, the two territorial battalions, and the first seven service battalions remain as previously listed [=1st November]. No further territorial battalions were mobilised during November. No further service battalions were created during November.

THE WELCH REGIMENT (the ancestral 41st and 69th Regiments of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])
1st Bn is still in India. The decimated 2nd Bn [=1st November] is presently being rebuilt using the survivors as a cadre for drafts of replacements. The reserve battalion, the first five territorial battalions, and the first eight service battalions remain as previously listed [=1st November]. Two further territorial battalions were mobilised during November, namely 2/5th [Territorial] Bn at Pontypridd and 2/7th [Territorial] (Cyclist) Bn at Cardiff. One further service battalion was created during November, namely 16th [(Service)] (Cardiff City) Bn [38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Cardiff.

THE (TERRITORIAL) WELSH ARMY I- INFANTRY
The following territorial infantry regiments in Wales (sometimes also in the border counties of England) are mobilising in their respective garrison town(s) ...

THE CHESHIRE REGIMENT
The 2nd Bn Cheshire Regiment has mobilised the last of its four affiliated territorial battalions, namely 2/5th (Earl of Chester's) Bn [53rd (from 18th February 1915)] at Chester.

THE HEREFORDSHIRE REGIMENT
No change during November 1914 [last substantive comment <=1st September].

THE MONMOUTHSHIRE REGIMENT
The 1/2nd Bn [1st November <=2nd December] has been in France since 7th November as part of 4th Division.
Those units already assigned to 53rd (Welsh) Division remain in training at Northampton.

II - MOUNTED
No change during November 1914 [last substantive comment <=1st November].

THE (REGULAR) "WELSH ARMY"
No change during November 1914 [last substantive comment <=1st October].

END OF MONTHLY UPDATE, NOVEMBER 1914

1914 (Tuesday 1st December) **Coronel and the Falklands [XVII - The Royal Navy Rounds on Churchill]**: [Continued from 12th November] Concerned that the Admiralty seems to be scapegoating Cradock [<=11th November] for the defeat at Coronel, Sir Charles Beresford [1st Baron Beresford]¹⁹¹⁶ [Wikipedia biography] comes to his defence of his name and reputation in Parliament, thus ...

"... in the Service we regret that some mark of esteem and sympathy for [Cradock] was not brought forward at the instance [sic, but perhaps insistence - Ed.] of the Government. [...] He was a very capable officer. [...] Some small attempt has been made to throw blame upon this admiral [...] He fought a superior force and he had ineffective ships and reserve crews, but he maintained the old tradition of our Navy" (Hansard, 68:597-600).

The First Lord of the Admiralty, **Winston Churchill** [13th October<=15th December], replies that there is little he is at liberty to say on the matter because all the relevant evidence is still top secret [sub-thread continues at 2nd December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 (Tuesday 1st December) **Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXVI - Propaganda for Christmas]**: [Continued from 23rd November] Today's Glasgow Herald carries an advertisement for "King Albert's Book" [Wikipedia factsheet], a Christmas fund-raiser in aid of the relief charities for Belgian refugees. The work is at the same time a self-proclaimed "remarkable" piece of propaganda, and hits American shelves a fortnight later [sub-thread continues at 5th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 PROPAGANDA]

1914 (Tuesday 1st December) **The 11th (Australian) Battalion** [17th August=>1915 (25th April)] is disembarked in Egypt [see group photograph on one of the pyramids], where, over the coming months, they will finish their training. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 (Tuesday 1st-13th December) **The Eastern Campaign [VII - The Battle of Limanowa]**: [Continued from 11th November] This battle is fought for control of what is now southern Poland [map, etc.] between the Austro-Hungarian Fourth Army under von Hötzendörfl [<=7th July] and the Russian Third Army under Nikolai Ivanov [Wikipedia biography]. The outcome is an Austro-Hungarian victory and the halting of the Russian offensive [sub-thread continues at 1915 (7th February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 (Wednesday 2nd December) **Near Armentières** [maplink at 5th October], the **1/2nd Bn Monmouthshire Regiment** [1st September=>1st January], recruited from Pontypool and the surrounding towns, has the honour of being the first Territorial Force unit to be trusted to hold a stretch of front line. Since their ranks include many miners from the South Wales coalfield, they start to specialise in tunnelling warfare. [THREAD = THE WW1 UNDERGROUND WAR]

1914 (Wednesday 2nd December) **Islam in WW1 [VI - Muslims Get their own Detention Camp]**: [Continued from 14th November] Höpp (1997, p37) reports the opening on 2nd
December of a new Muslim-sensitive prisoner-of-war camp at Zossen [map, etc.], 20 miles south of Berlin. By the end of the year it will have accepted some 800 prisoners [sub-thread continues at 1915 (1st March) ...]. [THREAD = THE BATTLE FOR HEARTS AND MINDS] [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

1914 [Wednesday 2nd-6th December] **Coronel and the Falklands [XVIII - Further Delay]:** [Continued from 1st December] On 2nd December, with their transit of Cape Horn nearly ended, von Spee's [12th November <=> 7th December] squadron captures the British collier Drummuir [no convenient shipography] and decides to make good use of her cargo of 2750 tons of "Cardiff Kohlen" before scuttling her. The squadron therefore anchors at Picton Island [map, etc.], still 500 miles short of the Falkland Islands. Von Spee takes advantage of the delay to hold a council of war with his captains. His plan is to destroy the facilities on the Falklands as they pass by, rather than (as several of the captains counselled) giving the place a wide berth [sub-thread continues at 7th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [Thursday 3rd-9th December] **The Mesopotamian Campaign [III - The Battle of Qurna]:** [Continued from 11th November] This battle is fought for control of the confluence of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, Iraq, between a British column under C. I. Fry [no convenient biography] and the Ottoman garrison in and around Qurna under Subhi Bey [no convenient biography]. The outcome is a British victory [sub-thread continues at 1915 (12th April) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Friday 4th December] **Irish Home Rule [XXXIII - Casement Recruits for the Germans]:** [Continued from 20th November] Having obtained the German Foreign Office's promise of political support for an independent Ireland [<=20th November] Casement [20th November <=> 1916 (1st March)] now visits the prisoner-of-war camp at Limburg to address the Irish contingent amongst them. Irish Nationalist sympathisers are invited to sign up in an anti-British "Irish Brigade" [Wikipedia factsheet =>1916 (1st March)] within the German Army. Take-up is negligible [sub-thread continues at 1915 (10th June) ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD]

********** MAGHULL WAR HOSPITAL IS BORN **********

1914 [Friday 4th/7th December] **Shellshock [I - Maghull' Comes on Stream]:** [New sub-thread. Readers specifically researching this topic may be interested in the 19th century debates on "railway spine" and "nervous shock". See, for example, the entry at 1882 (??th January).] Wishing to create a large secure facility for "soldiers suffering from mental shock" the War Office takes over Moss Side High Security Asylum [<=?7th July], Maghull, and redesignates it Maghull War Hospital [=>1915 (?7th March)]. In its new role Maghull will receive its first batch of 20 shellshock patients back from France on 21st December (Jones, 2010 online). William Rees-Thomas [<=?7th July] will continue to serve as Medical Superintendent until the following Spring [=>1915 (?7th May)], but assisted now by H. L. Burton [no convenient biography], previously Deputy Medical Officer at Manchester Prison [sub-thread continues at 1915 (8th February) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

1'ASIDE: As we have already noted [<=?7th July], Maghull treated far more patients than the much better known Craiglockhart War Hospital. The prima facie explanation for this is that that only the latter institution featured in later war novels.

1914 [Friday 4th December] **Atrocity [VIII - The Bryce Report Commissioned]:** [Continued from 22nd December August] In an attempt to keep the issue of German atrocities in Belgium in the public eye James Bryce, 1st Viscount Bryce [Wikipedia biography =>1915 (12th May)] is appointed to chair the "German Outrages Inquiry Committee" [Wikipedia factsheet] [sub-thread continues at 1915 (12th May) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 REPRISALS AND ATROCITIES] [THREAD = WW1 PROPAGANDA]
[Friday 4th December] Now that Tsingtao has fallen [<=31st October] 2nd Bn South Wales Borderers [1st December<=] 1915 (1st January) embarks at Hong Kong, en route for Plymouth and service in Europe. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

[Saturday 5th December] Edwin Goodall [1908 (15th April)<=>1915 (9th June)] draws on his first six years as Medical Director at Whitchurch Mental Hospital [1908 (15th April)<=>1915 (9th June)] to deliver a Croonian Lecture [Wikipedia factsheet] under the title "Modern Aspects of Certain Problems in the Pathology of Mental Disorders". [THREAD = WW1 MILITARY MEDICINE AND COGNITIVE SCIENCE]

[Saturday 5th December] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXVII - Wales Targeted]: [Continued from 1st December] Recruiting for the proposed Welsh Army Corps [<=5th October] begins in local Labour Exchanges across Wales. The campaign relies heavily on the inspirational value of the "Stick it!" incident [<=23rd November] [sub-thread continues at 11th December ...]. [THREAD = WW1 RECRUITMENT]

[Monday 7th December] The Serbian Campaign [IV - The Declaration of Niš]: [Continued from 16th November] The Serbian Parliament declares itself and its Croatian and Slovenian "brothers" to be in a "holy struggle" for "liberation and unification" [sub-thread continues at 1915 (7th October) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

[Monday 7th December] 1st Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers [27th October<=] 1915 (1st January) is now back to strength following its decimation at Zandvoorde, and is back with 1st Division on the Western Front. [THREAD = WW1 ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

[Monday 7th December] Coronel and the Falklands [XXIX - Sturdee's Taskforce Arrives]: [Continued from 2nd December] After a month at sea Sturdee's [11th November<=] 8th December] taskforce berths at the Falkland Islands and immediately starts coaling. His force has now been supplemented by the armoured cruisers HMS Carnarvon [Wikipedia shipography] 8th December,] HMS Kent [Wikipedia shipography] 8th December] and HMS Cornwall [Wikipedia shipography] 8th December], the light cruisers HMS Bristol [Wikipedia biography] 8th December] and HMS Glasgow [3rd November<=] 8th December], and the armed merchant cruiser Macedonia [no convenient shipography] 8th December]. Meanwhile von Spee's [2nd December<=] 8th December] squadron is still a day away to the south but - acting on (perhaps not accidental)\(^1\) false intelligence - heading straight for them\(^1\) [continues next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

\(^1\)ASIDE - WAS VON SPEE DUPED: Bennett (1962) gives the conventional explanation that on the morning of 7th December von Spee received a report from a German agent that there were no British ships at the Falkland Islands. However the ships in question were not Sturdee's but rather a detachment from Archibald Stoddart's [no convenient biography] Mid-Atlantic patrol which had (unaware that von Spee was taking his time) come and gone some days since. However it was claimed in the 1933 war memoirs of a German naval intelligence officer named von Rintelen [5th August<=] 1915 (3rd April)] that Blinker Hall [13th October<=] 1916 (21st April)] once personally confided in him at a social event after the war that while von Spee had been at Valparaiso after the Battle of Coronel [<=3rd November] he had received "definite and unambiguous instructions to proceed to the Falkland Islands" in order to destroy the wireless station there (Rintelen, 1933, p191). Hall knew this to be the case, von Rintelen explained, because he - a Briton in Whitehall - had composed the telegram himself, using a British agent in Berlin to slip the message into the outgoing signals despatch system!

********** CRADOCK AVENGED *******

[Tuesday 8th December] Coronel and the Falklands [XX - The Battle of the Falkland Islands]: [Continued from preceding entry] This battle was fought between von Spee's [7th December<=] dies this day] squadron, intent upon putting Britain's Falkland Islands wireless
station and bunkering facilities out of commission before high-tailing it for home, and 

Sturdee's [<=7th December] battlecruiser taskforce. The ships (and their captains) are as follows ...

GERMAN (Admiral von Spee in overall command aboard Scharnhorst)


BRITISH (Admiral Sturdee in overall command aboard Invincible)


Von Spee's ships are first spotted by Canopus' shore-based lookout post on Sapper Hill, four miles west of the harbour at Port Stanley ...

ASIDE: To see the view from Sapper Hill for yourself check out the webcam at http://www.sure.co.fk/index.php/sapper-hill.

... the flaghoist "enemy in sight" being raised at 0756hr. Sturdee now has a major, indeed potentially disastrous, problem on his hands, namely that all but one of his ships are simultaneously out of steam and coaling. If the Germans keep coming then they will be upon him in an hour and a half or so, and his force will be sitting targets. Only the armoured cruiser Kent still has any steam, having been last in the queue for coal, and at 0845hr, with nearly empty bunkers, she leaves harbour to take station to the east of Stanley.

By 0900hr the Sapper Hill lookouts - thanks to their height advantage - have all seven of von Spee's ships in sight whilst for its part the nearest German ship, Gneisenau, can see smoke from the harbour but is still struggling to see what ships are making it. Then at 0920hr Canopus fires the first shots of the battle and, reportedly, manages to pepper Gneisenau with splinters from a near miss on her first salvo ...

ASIDE: This was no mean feat, considering that the gun-laying was being done from the top of a hill some four miles away and the ship was firing blind over an intervening headland. For the fuller story see the detailed material maintained on the web by the quaintly named local media organisation, Penguin News.

At 0930hr the Germans make a serious error of their own. Having seen two large mastsbades beyond the intervening headland, and noting the range at which they have just been fired upon, Gneisenau reports that they are faced with two battleships, and, because his squadron has the speed to outrun battleships, von Spee decides to call off his attack and skirt the Falklands to the north-east.
ASIDE: If the battleships had been correctly identified at this juncture as battlecruisers, then von Spee would have gained no advantage by making a run for it, because he would have been overtaken and forced into a firefight on British terms. Facing battlecruisers the Germans should have pressed on with the original attack while the British were still immobile.

At 0945hr Glasgow has enough steam to weigh anchor and sets off after Kent. She is followed between 1000hr and 1100hr (by which time the Germans are perhaps 20 miles ahead) by Carnarvon, Indefatigable, Invincible, and Cornwall, in that order. Given the speed of the battlecruisers once they turn on their oil-spray supercharging this equates to a two hour stern chase before they are in range. Nor is this fact lost on von Spee now that he has a clearer view of who his pursuers actually are. All he can do is come around to the south-east so that the wind is squarely from behind him, which has the effect of masking him from the pursuers with their own smoke.

At 1255hr the battlecruisers have caught up enough to engage Leipzig (due to engineering problems, the slowest of the German ships) at long range, but without success. However by 1320hr the range has closed and von Spee signals the three light cruisers to break southward while he turns the heavier units 90º to port to try to cross Sturdee's T [Wikipedia factsheet]. The ensuing two-against-two battle (Carnarvon is still well behind) now lasts some three hours as the four ships duck and weave. But hits gradually accumulate on both German ships, prompting von Spee to signal Maerke to the effect that he should have listened to his reservations as to the wisdom of the attack [<=2nd December]. In the end Scharnhorst's damage is unsustainable and she sinks at 1617hr with no survivors. Two hours after that Gneisenau sinks with 190 survivors.

Kent, meanwhile, has been running down Nürnberg, spending the afternoon exchanging long-range fire, and reduced for want of coal to burning her boats, doors, furniture, etc. Then at 1745hr Nürnberg loses two of her boilers to structural failure and the resulting loss of speed forces her, too, to turn and make a fight of it. Kent, however, is a 10,000 ton armoured cruiser with 6” guns whereas Nürnberg is a 4000 ton light cruiser with 4.1” guns, and by 1857hr the latter is forced to abandon ship, with only 9 of her crew picked up alive. Glasgow and Cornwall have likewise been chasing down the already limping Leipzig. This action begins at 1450hr and lasts close on six hours before Leipzig, too, is sunk, with only 18 of her crew picked up.

For the battle as a whole the overall body-count is 10 British killed and 19 wounded against 2200 Germans lost with their ships and a further 217 fished out of the sea as prisoners-of-war. Dresden, the fastest of the light cruisers, manages to outrun the pursuers and will make her way over the coming days back round Cape Horn to Punta Arenas. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

********** THE RETURN OF THE PRESS GANG **********

1914 [Friday 11th December] Censorship, Propaganda, and Recruitment [XXVIII - Recruitment as Persuasion]: [Continued from 5th December] Today's New York Times carries a short report from London to the effect (a) that the British War Office has "become convinced of the value of advertisement in order to obtain recruits for the army", and (b) that they have contracted with the publicist-publisher [Sir]1916 Hedley Francis Le Bas [no convenient biography=>1915 (19th March)], "Director of the Caxton Publishing Company" to conduct the campaign. The Press, the piece confesses, "is going to do in 1914 by persuasion what the press gang did a hundred years ago by force". Le Bas will shortly be sent to Ireland to promote recruitment there [=>1915 (19th March)] [sub-thread continues at 1915 (19th March) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 RECRUITMENT]
1914 [Monday 14th December] Frank Bertram Legh [17th October<=>1915 (30th November)] is posted to the Western Front, where he is "probably" assigned to an artillery field survey unit (De Santis, 2006 online). [THREAD = WWI ARTILLERY]

1914 [Tuesday 15th-16th December] The North Sea Campaign [III - The Raids on Hartlepool, Scarborough, and Whitby]: [Continued from 3rd November] This battle is fought between the German High Seas Fleet under the overall command of von Ingenohl [28th August<=>1915 (2nd February)] and a significantly weaker detachment of the British Grand Fleet under the overall command of Sir George Warrender, 7th Baronet [Wikipedia biography]. The German propose (a) to use von Hipper's [3rd November<=>23rd January] Battlecruiser Squadron to bombard the Yorkshire coast in the hope that it will bring out elements of the Grand Fleet to cut them off, and then (b) to ambush that response with heavier units lying in wait. Von Hipper sets sail with his battlecruisers at 0320hr on 15th December. The main High Seas Fleet follows a tide later, but deliberately hangs back awaiting its moment. It so happens, however, that Britain's Room 40 Codebreakers [??th August<=>1915 (23rd January)] have been monitoring the German fleet's wireless transmissions using their increasingly effective eavesdropping network [<=??th September] and, thanks to the captured SKM codebook [<=26th August], have learned that Scarborough is one of the targets of this raid. Warrender is accordingly already at sea attempting his own ambush, with the six battleships of the 2nd Battle Squadron, four of Beatty's [28th August<=>1915 (23rd January)] battlecruisers, and an escort of both heavy and light cruisers. The battle takes place in three phases, namely (1) an early contact (and a wasted German opportunity), (2) the bombardment itself, and (3) the German withdrawal (and a rather chaotic British pursuit).

(1) The early contact is at 0520hr between the two fleets' destroyer screens, whereupon Ingenohl concludes that the secrecy of his operation must have somehow been compromised and that there is accordingly a strong probability that the entire Grand Fleet is close to hand. He therefore turns his battleships for home.

    ASIDE - THE WASTED GERMAN OPPORTUNITY: By withdrawing his battleship squadrons at this juncture von Ingenohl was obeying Kaiser Wilhelm II's [14th November<=>1915 (5th August)] rules of engagement to the letter [<=>28th August]. Nevertheless he outnumbered the British at this point in time by better than two-to-one [14:6 in Dreadnoughts, with eight pre-Dreadnoughts also at hand], and was widely criticised for not having been more adventurous.

(2) Von Hipper divides his battlecruisers into two groups, sending the first group (SMS Seydlitz [1913 (22nd May)<=>1915 (23rd January)], SMS Moltke [1911 (28th March)<=>1915 (23rd January]), and SMS Blücher [1909 (1st October)<=>1915 (23rd January)]) to shell the Royal Navy's anchorage at Hartlepool and the second group (SMS Von der Tann [Wikipedia shipography]<>1916 (24th April) and SMS Derfflinger [Wikipedia shipography]<>1915 (23rd January)) to shell Scarborough and Whitby. The shore bombardment phase lasts from 0810hr to 0930hr, during which time the Germans fire 1150 shells, causing material damage and killing/wounding 137/592 people [full story]. The Hartlepool coastal defence batteries reply with 143 shells, lightly damaging Seydlitz and Blücher. Scarborough (a seaside resort) and Whitby (a fishing port) are, we are told, undefended and of no military or naval value [except, perhaps, for the Royal Navy's wireless station in the Falsgrave district of Scarborough].

    ASIDE - HOW THE BOMBARDMENT WAS REPORTED: The youngest of the 18 people killed in the Scarborough raid was 14-month-old John Shields Ryalls, and so it was easy, in expressing his condolences to the bereaved a few hours after the action, for the First Lord of the Admiralty Winston Churchill [1st December<=>1915 (1st January)] to coin the tagline...
"the baby-killers of Scarborough". The War Propaganda Bureau [<=22nd September] also sprang to the offensive, correctly sensing something of a propaganda gift ...

**DOUBLE ASIDE:** At this point we shall review the contribution of one of the Bureau's areas of activity, namely the editorial cartoon, and of one such cartoonist in particular ...

Taking the work of the Cardiff-based editorial cartoonist **Joseph M. Staniforth** [<=23rd November] as typical, here is how the War Propaganda Bureau exploited the German raid over the ensuing month ...

18th December "A Heroic Deed" [see it now], in which the attack is depicted as vandalism.

19th December "It Was a Glorious Victory" [see it now], in which the Kaiser is shown exulting in said vandalism.

22nd December "An Irremovable Stain" [see it now], showing the Kaiser now distinctly irritated by the Germans being labelled "Baby-killers".

And so on for many weeks - just search by the keyword <Scarborough>. There was a surge in recruitment during this period.

(3) The pursuit phase of the battle begins at around 0945hr as the German battlecruisers regroup to make their way back out to sea. Ahead of them are Warrender's and Beatty's respective squadrons, their own light cruiser screen, and a British light cruiser screen, nobody with any great idea where the other is. Von Hipper now faces two distinct challenges, namely (a) as a seaman he must successfully navigate around the Dogger Bank shallows [map, etc.] whilst (b) as an Admiral he must do (a) without getting sunk. At 1125hr the two cruisers screens sight each other leading this element of the German fleet to turn to the south-east, where Warrender's battleships happen to be lying in wait. Warrender sights them at 1215hr but the cruisers' higher speed enables them to avoid close action. Nevertheless the contact prompts Beatty, presently guarding the northern escape route, to turn his battlecruisers southward as well. Von Hipper, however, is further away from his light cruisers than the British suspect, and has been steering north-eastward since 1245hr. At 1315hr Beatty turns northward again but his chances of intercepting have been reduced by the diversion and what happens next will rob him of the opportunity altogether. At 1343hr the Admiralty receives intelligence that the High Seas Fleet is off Heligoland. They are, it will be recalled, presently **going home**, but the Admiralty concludes that they are coming out and Warrender's and Beatty's consequent diversion to the east allows von Hipper to skirt them using the northern escape route. At 1547hr, there being no further contacts, Warrender calls off the search.

The battle is noteworthy in the present context because it illustrates the practical problems of large fleet command and control in the days before radar, satellite surveillance, GPS, drones, etc. [continues at 1915 (24th January) ...]. [THREAD = WW1 SURFACE NAVY OPERATIONS]

1914 [15th-21st December] **WW1 in the Caucasus [II - The Initial Moves (The Battle of Ardahan)]:** [Continued from 1st November 1914] On 15th December 1914 an Ottoman column commanded by a Prussian adviser General **August Stange** [pronounce as shtang-er; no convenient biography] succeeds in capturing the crossroads city of **Ardahan** [map] but carelessly leaves open a soft right flank [sub-thread continues at 22nd December 1914 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD][THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]
1914 [Wednesday 17th-18th December] The Battle of Notre-Dame-de-Lorette: This battle is fought for control of the Notre-Dame-de-Lorette ridge at Ablain [maplink at 1st October] between Maistre's [<=8th October] XXI Corps and the German defenders on said ridge. The Germans have been in position since the Battle of Arras [<=1st October], and have used the intervening ten weeks to good effect by hardening their positions with wire, dugouts, defence in depth, strongpoints, and pre-registered artillery. The French attack struggles accordingly and is called off after 48 hours. The battle is noteworthy in the present context as an early example of how difficult attacks against well-prepared trench systems are going to get. For one thing the French 75s are now too light a weapon for too much of the time, with heavier calibres (with all their attendant logistical demands) being needed for wire-cutting, bunker busting, and the interdiction of communications [continues at next entry ...]. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

****** CITIES FOR THE DEAD ******

ASIDE: After the war the French War Office rebuilt what had originally been a simple local chapel as a full-scale Basilica-Ossuary [Wikipedia factsheet], and the contested hillside is nowadays the largest of the French military cemeteries, namely the Nécropole1 Nationale Française de Notre-Dame de Lorette.
1From the Greek nekroi the dead, with polis city.

1914 [Wednesday 17th December-1915 (13th January)] The Christmas Offensives in Artois and Further South: The Battle of Notre-Dame-de-Lorette [<=preceding entry] is in fact part of a more general French winter offensive. Joffre's [8th October<=1915 (24th March)] broad plan is to have Langle de Cary's [10th September<=1916 (19th April)] Fourth Army advance northward from Reims toward Mézières [map, etc.] at the same time that Dubail's [<=24th August] First Army and de Maud'huy's [10th October<=1915 (2nd April)] Tenth Army advance eastward from Artois, thereby snipping off the entire right-angled German salient at Noyon [<=17th September]. Armies further south will stage local offensives to pin down German reserves. We have already seen that the Artois offensive at Lorette loses impetus within the first 48 hours. In the Champagne and Argonne regions the battle is between Fourth Army and von Einem's [<=26th August] Third Army and Crown Prince Wilhelm's [29th September<=1916 (21st February)] Fifth Army. The main thrust falls to XVII Corps under Noel Dumas [Wikipedia biography], and the initial fighting lasts from 20th to 28th December around Perthes-lès-Hurlus [map, etc.]. No strategically significant gains are made. Similar local offensives flare up, only to die down again, in the Verdun, St. Mihiel, and Nancy sectors. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Sunday 20th-21st December] The Battle of Givenchy: This comparatively localised action takes place at Givenchy-lès-la-Bassée [maplink at 10th October] on the now generally quiet La Bassée front [<=27th October] between local elements of Crown Prince Rupprecht's [preceding entry<=1915 (1st January)] Sixth (Bavarian) Army and local elements of Willecks' [27th October<=1915 (31st October)] I Indian Corps. The battle begins at 0900hr on 20th December with the detonation of mines under a section of the British front line, followed firstly, in the confusion, by a short German advance, and the following day by a controlled withdrawal at cost to the counter-attacking British reserves. [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [22nd December] WW1 in the Caucasus [III - The Battle of Sarikamish (The Armenians Take Sides)]: [Continued from 15th December 1914] On 22nd December 1914 the Ottoman 3rd Army, which has been advancing to the right of General Stange's forces, engage with the Russians defending Sarikamis [map]. The defenders are commanded by General Nikolai Yudenich [Wikipedia biography] (of whom much more in the fullness of time), and put up a spirited resistance [sub-thread continues at 6th January 1915 ...]. [THREAD = THE SHAPING OF THE MODERN WORLD] [THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]
1914 [Tuesday 22nd December] **1st Bn Welch Regiment** [Wartime Memories Project factsheet] arrives back in Britain from foreign service in India, and is assigned to **28th Division** [Wikipedia factsheet]. [THREAD = WWI ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

1914 [Friday 25th-26th December] **The Christmas Truce**: In the spirit of Christmas there are a number of unofficial truces along the Western Front, including several where the opposing forces meet in Nomansland to exchange pleasantries and gifts. The memoirs of the **2nd Bn Royal Welch Fusiliers** [1st December<=1st January] record just such an instance ...

"Our Pioneer Sergeant [name] made a screen and painted on it 'A Merry Christmas', which we hoisted on Christmas morning. No shots were fired. On the left we could see that our fellows were carrying the breakfast in the open, and everything was quiet. Both sides got a bit venturous and looked over the top; then a German started to walk down the tow-path toward our lines and [name] went to meet him. The German handed over a box of cigars. Later the Germans came boldly out of their trenches, but our men were forbidden to leave theirs, so they threw out tins of bully, and plum and apple jam, etc...." (Dunn, 1938, p101).

And on Boxing Day ...

"At 8.30 I fired three shots in the air and put up a flag with 'Merry Christmas' on it [...]. He put up a sheet with 'Thank you' on it, [...] fired two shots in the air, and the War was on again" (Dunn, 1938, pp102-103).

[THREAD = WW1 MAJOR BATTLES AND CAMPAIGNS]

1914 [Saturday 26th December] Now that III Corps and IV Corps have arrived in theatre **Haig** [27th October<=1915 (1st January)] takes command of First Army, merging I Corps with IV Corps and the Indian Corps, and **Smith-Dorrien** [10th October<=1915 (6th May)] takes command of Second Army, merging II Corps with III Corps and the Cavalry Corps. [THREAD = WWI ARMIES, TRADITIONS, AND TACTICS]

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
MONTHLY UPDATE, DECEMBER 1914
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Note**: Those battalions earmarked for 53rd [Territorial] (Welsh) Division are identified thus [53rd (from 5th August)]; those battalions subsequently brought together to serve in 38th (Welsh) Division are identified thus [38th (from 29th November 1915)].

1915 [Friday 1st January] **Present Location of Welsh Units**: Not a lot has changed during December. Here is the status of the British Army's essentially Welsh units at the end of the fifth month of the war ...

**ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS** *(the ancestral 23rd Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])*

The decimated **1st Bn** [<=7th December] has now been rebuilt and is back in France with **1st Division. 2nd Bn** [38th (from 29th November 1915)], having been in France since mid-August, remains part of **6th Division** [1st December<=2015 (1st February)]. The reserve battalion, the eight territorial battalions, and the first nine service battalions remain as previously listed [<=1st December]. No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. No further service battalions were created during December.

**SOUTH WALES BORDERERS** *(the ancestral 24th Regiment of Foot [<=1881 (1st July)])*

The decimated **1st Bn** has now been rebuilt and is back in France with **1st Division. 2nd Bn** [4th December<=12th January] is at sea, returning from the Far East. The reserve battalion, the two territorial battalions, and the first seven service battalions remain as previously listed
No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

**THE WELCH REGIMENT (the ancestral 41st and 69th Regiments of Foot)**[^<=1881 (1st July)]  
1st Bn has just got back from India and has been assigned to 28th Division. The decimated 2nd Bn[^<=1st November] is presently being rebuilt using the survivors as a cadre for drafts of replacements. The reserve battalion, the first seven territorial battalions, and the first nine service battalions remain as previously listed[^<=1st November]. One further territorial battalion was mobilised during December, namely **2/6th [(Territorial)] (Glamorgan) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Swansea. One further service battalion was created during December, namely **17th [(Service)] (1st Glamorgan) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Cardiff.

**THE (TERRITORIAL) WELSH ARMY**

**I - INFANTRY**

The following territorial infantry regiments in Wales (sometimes also in the border counties of England) are mobilising in their respective garrison town(s) ...

**THE CHESHIRE REGIMENT**

No change during December 1914 [last substantive comment <=1st November].

**THE HEREFORDSHIRE REGIMENT**

During December 1/1st Bn has relocated to Bury St. Edmonds, Suffolk, and 2/1st Bn has relocated to Aberystwyth [next substantive comment =>1915 (24th April)].

**THE MONMOUTHSHIRE REGIMENT**

The 1/2nd Bn[^2nd December<=1st February] is still in France with 4th Division. Those units already assigned to 53rd (Welsh) Division remain in training at Northampton.

**II - MOUNTED**

No change during December 1914 [last substantive comment <=1st November] [next substantive comment =>1915 (1st November)].

**THE (REGULAR) "WELSH ARMY"**

No change during December 1914 [last substantive comment <=1st October].

[^1st December]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^<=1st December]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^1st November]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^2nd December<=1st February]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^2nd December<=1st February]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^<=1881 (1st July)]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^<=1881 (1st July)]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^38th (from 29th November 1915)]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.

[^38th (from 29th November 1915)]: No further territorial battalions were mobilised during December. One more service battalion was created during December, namely **11th [(Service)] (2nd Gwent) Bn**[^38th (from 29th November 1915)] at Brecon.
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1917
Part 10 - The War Itself, 1918
Part 11 - Deception as a Profession, 1919 to date